PA 2087
.K4

1867

Jennings
Sept. 67

THE PUBLIC SCHOOL

LATIN PRIMER.

EDITED WITH THE SANCTION OF THE HEAD MASTERS
OF THE PUBLIC SCHOOLS INCLUDED IN
HER MAJESTY'S COMMISSION.

[Kennedy, Benjamin Hall]

Ordinis haec virtus erit et Venus, aut ego fallor,
Ut jam nunc dicat jam nunc debentia dici,
Pleraque differat et praesens in tempus omittat.
HOR. ad Pis. 42.

LONDON:
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.
1867.

PA2087
K4
1867

Preparing for Publication.

SUBSIDIA PRIMARIA.

PARTS I. AND II.

BEING

COMPANION BOOKS TO THE PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.

Gift
Mrs. Hennen Jennings
April 26, 1933

PREFACE.

THE PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER is founded on a Latin grammar, which has been largely used in English schools during the last twenty years. It has been revised with great care and attention, first by its author, subsequently by the Head-masters of various public schools, with the advice of other scholars engaged in classical instruction.

The Primer is put forth as a standard grammar for all classes in public schools below the highest: and the design is, by exhibiting in clear and concise synthesis the leading principles and facts of Latin, to carry learners forward in the right direction to that stage of progress from which they may advance to wider philological studies without having anything to unlearn.

In the manner of its use, this book does not differ from the grammar on which it is founded, or from any other synthetic grammar. Its memorial lessons need discreet guidance, careful explanation, and sound catechesis on the part of masters. They need also to be supported and supplemented by good exercise-books (Subsidia Primaria) of a merely analytic and imitative character.

The distinctive features of the Primer are mainly these:—

1. By discerning from the outset the Stem (or Crude Form) of declined words, the learner is prepared to understand the principles of higher philology.
2. The arrangement of the Six Cases given by Key, Madvig, and Roby, is adopted.
3. The division of the Verb into two parts, Finite and Infinite, appears as in Krüger's grammar.
4. Neat and uniform adjustment of the Paradigms is observed as an important aid to the memory.
5. The Memorial Syntax appears in English (with the Latin Examples) as well as in Latin, to meet the wish of those masters who object to the use of Latin rules. In the English rules brevity and precision are, as far as possible, preserved.
6. An Appendix of brief Notes is given, enabling learners to make considerable advance in the study of Latin.
7. A Glossary of Terms is added for the purpose of reference.

Any remarks (sent through the Publishers), which may tend to improve future editions, will be thankfully received and fully considered.

LONDON:
January, 1867.

THE

PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.

ETYMOLOGY.

THE LETTERS.

§ 1. The Latin ALPHABET is the English without W. The Letters have two forms: (1) the Capital, or ancient; and (2) the Cursive, or modern form.

(1) A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P
(2) a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p
Q R S T U V X Y Z.
q r s t u v x y z.

§ 2. The VOWELS, *sounding by themselves*, are a, e, i, o, u, y.

§ 3. The CONSONANTS *sound with* Vowels: of these

The Mutes are b, c, d, g, k, p, q, and t:
The Liquids are l, m, n, r:
The Spirants f, h, j, s, v:
The Double, x and z, express two letters each, cs, ds.

1. *K* remains in very few words: as, Kalendae.
2. *Y* and *z* only in words from the Greek: as, Dryas, zona.
3. *Q* blends with *u* or *v*: as, quis or qvis.
4. *I* and *u* are Half-consonants, corresponding to the Half-vowels *j* and *v*.

§ 4. Latin has three usual DIPHTHONGS (double vowels), ae (æ), oe (œ), au: three seldom used, ei, eu, ui.

§ 5. Latin is spelt by SYLLABLES, as English.

§ 6. The Quantity of syllables is short (˘), long (¯), or doubtful (˘̄), as the vowels are short, long, or doubtful: as, fŭgĕrĭs.

A Vowel may be—

(1) Short or long by nature: as, ămās.
(2) Short by nature, but long by position: as, vīndēx. § 162. 4.
(3) Short by nature, but doubtful by position: as, quădrŭplo. § 162. *a*.

§ 7. Diphthongs are long.

§ 8. The modern Stops are used in Latin.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 9. The PARTS OF SPEECH, or WORDS, are of three kinds: I. NOUNS; II. VERB; III. PARTICLES.

I. (1) The SUBSTANTIVE names a Thing:

As, **rex,** *a king*; **Caesăr,** *Caesar.*

(*a*) Names of Persons and Places are PROPER NAMES.
All others are APPELLATIVA, or COMMON NOUNS.

(2) The ADJECTIVE attributes Quality:

As, mărĕ **vastum,** *the vast sea.*
Vastum is called an ATTRIBUTE or EPITHET of mărĕ.*

(3) The PRONOUN stands for Substantive or Adjective.

As, **tū,** *thou*; mănŭs **haec,** *this hand.*

NOUNS.

II. (4) The VERB states what a Thing is, does, or suffers:

As, hŏmĭnēs **cănunt,** *men sing.*

(*a*) Hŏmĭnēs is called the SUBJECT.
Cănunt is called the PREDICATE.

(*b*) When we say,
Mors est prŏpinquă, *death is nigh,*
Mors is the Subject;
Est is called the COPULA;
Prŏpinquă is called the COMPLEMENT;
And Copula with Complement is the Predicate.

VERB.

* A Substantive attributively joined to another Substantive is called its APPOSITE: as, Croesŭs rex Lȳdōrum, *Croesus, king of the Lydians,* where rex is Apposite to Croesŭs, and agrees with it in Case.

III. (5) The ADVERB shows Where, When, or How:
As, **Hūc** currĕ **nunc cĕlĕrĭtĕr,** *run hither now quickly.*

(6) The PREPOSITION governs the Case of a Noun; and shows the relation of it to some other word:
As, stō **ăd** fŏrēs, *I stand at the door.*

(7) The CONJUNCTION links words and clauses:
As, ŏvēs **ĕt** ăvēs, *sheep and birds.*

(8) The INTERJECTION is an exclamation:
As, **eccĕ** ningĭt, *lo, it snows.*

PARTICLES.

Note. There is no Article in Latin like *a, an, the,* in English. Thus lux may mean a *light,* the *light,* or simply *light.*

§ 10. Hence the Parts of Speech may be called eight:

1. Substantive,	5. Adverb,
2. Adjective,	6. Preposition,
3. Pronoun,	7. Conjunction,
4. Verb,	8. Interjection,
Which have Flexion.	Which are without Flexion.

§ 11. (1) The changes made in a word, in order to vary its meaning, are called its FLEXION or INFLECTION.

(2) Nouns are DECLINED.
Verbs are CONJUGATED.

(3) A Noun has three ACCIDENTS: NUMBER, CASE, GENDER;
A Verb five: VOICE, MOOD, TENSE, NUMBER, PERSON.

a. The STEM is that part of a word on which the changes of Flexion are based.

b. A Flexional addition at the end of the Stem is called an ENDING or SUFFIX.

c. The last letter of the Stem is called the CHARACTER, and in this book is often indicated by a Capital.

d. The Stem of a Noun is usually discerned by casting off *-rum* or *-um* from the Genitive Plural:* as, mensa-, dŏmĭno-, lĕon-, mări-, grădu-, dĭe-.

e. The Stem of a Verb is shown in the Imperative Mood: as, ămā-, audī-, mŏnē-. But in the Third Conjugation *-ĕ* must be cast off: as, rĕg-ĕ; and in a Deponent Verb *-rĕ* or *-ĕrĕ*: as, fa-rĕ, re-rĕ, lāb-ĕrĕ.

f. The ROOT is that part which a word has in common with kindred words. Thus in ăgĭtārĕ, ăgĭtā- is the Stem, but ag- the Root as shown by comparing ăg-ĕrĕ, ag-men. And *g* is the Root-character.

* Dropping *-rum* in the First, Second, and Fifth Declensions; *-um* in the hir. and Fourth.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 12. The Substantive is declined by Number and Case: the Adjective by Number, Case, and Gender, agreeing in these with its Substantive. See § 9 (2).

§ 13. The Numbers are two: 1. SINGULAR, speaking of one, as mensă, *a table*; 2. PLURAL, of more than one, as mensae, *tables*.

§ 14. The Cases are six.

	Answers the question		
1. NOMINATIVE .	. Who or what?	Quĭs dĕdĭt? . / *Who gave?* .	Vĭr, / *A man.*
2. VOCATIVE (Case of one addressed) .		. . .	Vĭr, / *O man.*
3. ACCUSATIVE .	. Whom or what?	Quem vĭdĕō? . / *Whom see I?* .	Vĭrum, / *A man.*
4. GENITIVE .	. Whose or whereof?	Cūjŭs dōnum? / *Whose gift?* .	Vĭrī, / *A man's.*
5. DATIVE .	. To or for whom or what?	Cui dătum? . / *To whom given?*	Vĭrō, / *To a man.*
6. ABLATIVE* .	. By, with, &c., whom or what?	Ā quō dătum? / *By whom given?*	Ā vĭrō, / *By a man.*

§ 15. The Genders are three: 1. MASCULINE; 2. FEMININE; 3. NEUTER. A Substantive which may be either Masculine or Feminine is said to be COMMON to both Genders.

SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 16. There are five Declensions of Latin Substantives, known by the endings of their Genitives:—

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Gen. Sing.	ae	ī	ĭs	ūs	ĕī
Gen. Plur.	Ārum	Ōrum	um† *or* Ĭum	Uum	Ērum

§ 17. (1) In Neuter Nouns, the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative are the same in each Number severally; and in the Plural they end in ă.

(2) The Vocative of Latin words is the same as the Nominative, except in Singular Nouns of the Second Declension like dŏmĭnŭs, fīlĭŭs.

(3) The Dative and Ablative Plural are always the same.

* Many English Particles may be signs of the Latin Ablative: as, *by, with, from, in, upon, of, for, at, than.*

† The Consonant before um is the Character. See § 11 *c*; § 21 (*a*).

THE FIRST DECLENSION (A-nouns).

§ 18. The First Declension contains Latin Nouns, mostly Feminine, with Nominative in **ă**; and a few Greek words, chiefly Proper Names, in **ās, ēs,** Masculine, and **ē** Feminine.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	**Mensă**, *a table*	**Mensae**, *tables*, f.
Voc.	**Mensă**, *O table*	**Mensae**, *O tables*
Acc.	**Mensam**, *a table*	**Mensās**, *tables*
Gen.	**Mensae**, *of a table*	**MensĀrum**, *of tables*
Dat.	**Mensae**, *to* or *for a table*	**Mensīs**, *to* or *for tables*
Abl.	**Mensā**, *by, with,* or *from a table*	**Mensīs**, *by, with,* or *from tables*

Decline also:

Singular.

	Goddess, f.	*Son of Theseus*, m.	*Aeneas*, m.	*Cybele*, f.
Nom.	Dĕ-**ă**	Thēsīd-**ēs**	Aenē-**ās**	Cўbĕl-**ē**
Voc.	Dĕ-**ă**	Thēsīd-**ē** (**ă, ā**)	Aenē-**ā**	Cўbĕl-**ē**
Acc.	Dĕ-**am**	Thēsīd-**ēn** (**am**)	Aenē-**ān** (**am**)	Cўbĕl-**ēn**
Gen.	Dĕ-**ae**	Thēsīd-**ae**	Aenē-**ae**	Cўbĕl-**ēs** (**ae**)
Dat.	Dĕ-**ae**	Thēsīd-**ae**	Aenē-**ae**	Cўbĕl-**ae**
Abl.	Dĕ-**ā**	Thēsīd-**ē** (**ā**)	Aenē-**ā**	Cўbĕl-**ē** (**ā**)

Plural.

N. V.	Dĕ-**ae**	Thēsīd-**ae**	(as Mensă,	(as Mensă,
Acc.	Dĕ-**ās**	Thēsīd-**ās**	but rare.)	but rare.)
Gen.	Dĕ-**ārum**	Thēsīd-**um**		
D. Abl.	Dĕ-**ābŭs.**	Thēsīd-**īs.**		

Note.—Masc. Substantives in ă are declined like mensă: as pŏētă, *a poet.*

THE SECOND DECLENSION (O-nouns).

§ 19. The Second Declension contains Nouns with Nominative in **ŭs, ĕr,** generally Masculine, and in **um,** Neuter.

(*a*) Masculine.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	**Dŏmĭnŭs**, *a lord*	**Dŏmĭnī**, *lords*, m.
Voc.	**Dŏmĭnĕ**, *O lord*	**Dŏmĭnī**, *O lords*
Acc.	**Dŏmĭnum**, *a lord*	**Dŏmĭnōs**, *lords*
Gen.	**Dŏmĭnī**, *of a lord*	**DŏmĭnŌrum**, *of lords*
Dat.	**Dŏmĭnō**, *to* or *for a lord*	**Dŏmĭnīs**, *to*, or *for lords*
Abl.	**Dŏmĭnō**, *by, with,* or *from a lord*	**Dŏmĭnīs**, *by, with,* or *from lords.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	**Pŭĕr**, *a boy*	**Pŭĕrī**, *boys*, m.
Voc.	**Pŭĕr**, *O boy*	**Pŭĕrī**, *O boys*
Acc.	**Pŭĕrum**, *a boy*	**Pŭĕrōs**, *boys*
Gen.	**Pŭĕrī**, *of a boy*	**Pŭĕrōrum**, *of boys*
Dat.	**Pŭĕrō**, *to* or *for a boy*	**Pŭĕrīs**, *to* or *for boys*
Abl.	**Pŭĕrō**, *by, with,* or *from a boy*	**Pŭĕrīs**, *by, with,* or *from boys.*

Nom.	**Măgistĕr**, *the master*	**Măgistrī**, *masters*, m.
Voc.	**Măgistĕr**, *O master*	**Măgistrī**, *O masters*
Acc.	**Măgistrum**, *the master*	**Măgistrōs**, *masters*
Gen.	**Măgistrī**, *of the master*	**Măgistrōrum**, *of masters*
Dat.	**Măgistrō**, *to* or *for the master*	**Măgistrīs**, *to* or *for masters*
Abl.	**Măgistrō**, *by, with,* or *from the master*	**Măgistrīs**, *by, with,* or *from masters.*

(*b*) NEUTER.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V. A.	**Bellum**, *war*, or *O war*	**Bellă**, *wars* or *O wars*
Gen.	**Bellī**, *of war*	**Bellōrum**, *of wars*
Dat.	**Bellō**, *to* or *for war*	**Bellīs**, *to* or *for wars*
Abl.	**Bellō**, *by, with,* or *from war*	**Bellīs**, *by, with,* or *from wars.*

Decline also:

Singular.

	Son, m.	*Coin*, m.	*God*, m.	*Garlic*, n.
Nom.	Fīlĭ-**ŭs**	Nūm-**ŭs**	Dĕ-**ŭs**	Allĭ-**um**
Voc.	Fīl-**ī**	Nūm-**ĕ**	Dĕ-**ŭs**	Allĭ-**um**
Acc.	Fīlĭ-**um**	Nūm-**um**	Dĕ-**um**	Allĭ-**um**
Gen.	Fīlĭ-**ī** or Fīlī	Nūm-**ī**	Dĕ-**ī**	Allī *or* Allĭ-**ī**
D. Abl.	Fīlĭ-**ō**	Nūm-**ō**	Dĕ-**ō**	Allĭ-**ō**

Plural.

N. V.	Fīlĭ-**ī**	Nūm-**ī**	Dī (seldom Dĕī)	Allĭ-**ă**
Acc.	Fīlĭ-**ōs**	Nūm-**ōs**	Dĕ-**ōs**	Allĭ-**ă**
Gen.	Fīlĭ-**ōrum**	Nūm-**ōrum** *or* Nūm-**um**	Dĕ-**ōrum** *or* Dĕ-**um**	Allĭ-**ōrum**
D. Abl.	Fīlĭ-**īs**.	Nūm-**īs**.	Dī**s** (seldom Dĕīs).	Allĭ-**īs**.

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Consonant and I-nouns).

§ 20. The Third Declension has two Divisions:

I. Nouns which have for Character a Consonant.

II. Nouns which have for Character the Half-consonant I.

Of these Divisions the First is Imparisyllable, having more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative Singular.

The Second is Parisyllable, having the same number of syllables in the Genitive as in the Nominative.

But a few Parisyllable Nouns belong to the Consonant Division; and many Imparisyllable Nouns to the I-Division.

The Endings of the Nominative Singular are numerous.

§ 21. I. CONSONANT-NOUNS.

(*a*) Masculine and Feminine.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	**Jūdex**, *a judge*, or *O judge*	**Jūdĭcēs**, *judges*, or *O judges*, c.
Acc.	**Jūdĭcem**, *a judge*	**Jūdĭcēs**, *judges*
Gen.	**Jūdĭcĭs**, *of a judge*	**JūdĭCum**, *of judges*
Dat.	**Jūdĭcī**, *to* or *for a judge*	**Jūdĭcĭbŭs**, *to* or *for judges*
Abl.	**Jūdĭcĕ**, *by, with,* or *from a judge*	**Jūdĭcĭbŭs**, *by, with,* or *from judges.*
N. V.	**Aetās**, *an age*, or *O age*	**Aetātēs**, *ages*, or *O ages*, f.
Acc.	**Aetātem**, *an age*	**Aetātēs**, *ages*
Gen.	**Aetātĭs**, *of an age*	**AetāTum**, *of ages*
Dat.	**Aetātī**, *to* or *for an age*	**Aetātĭbŭs**, *to* or *for ages*
Abl.	**Aetātĕ**, *by, with,* or *from an age*	**Aetātĭbŭs**, *by, with,* or *from ages.*
N. V.	**Lĕō**, *a lion*, or *O lion*	**Lĕōnēs**, *lions*, or *O lions*, m.
Acc.	**Lĕōnem**, *a lion*	**Lĕōnēs**, *lions*
Gen.	**Lĕōnĭs**, *of a lion*	**LĕōNum**, *of lions*
Dat.	**Lĕōnī**, *to* or *for a lion*	**Lĕōnĭbŭs**, *to* or *for lions*
Abl.	**Lĕōnĕ**, *by, with,* or *from a lion*	**Lĕōnĭbŭs**, *by, with,* or *from lions.*
N. V.	**Virgō**, *a virgin*, or *O virgin*	**Virgĭnēs**, *virgins*, or *O virgins*, f.
Acc.	**Virgĭnem**, *a virgin*	**Virgĭnēs**, *virgins*
Gen.	**Virgĭnĭs**, *of a virgin*	**VirgĭNum**, *of virgins*
Dat.	**Virgĭnī**, *to* or *for a virgin*	**Virgĭnĭbŭs**, *to* or *for virgins*
Abl.	**Virgĭnĕ**, *by, with,* or *from a virgin*	**Virgĭnĭbŭs**, *by, with,* or *from virgins.*

Decline also:

Singular.

	Law, f.	*Foot*, m.	*Love*, m.	*Cinder*, c.	*Father*, m.	
N. V.	Lex	Pēs	Ămŏr	Cĭnĭs	Păter	—
Acc.	Lēg-	Pĕd-	Ămōr-	Cĭnĕr-	Pātr-	**em**
Gen.	Lēg-	Pĕd-	Ămōr-	Cĭnĕr-	Pātr-	**ĭs**
Dat.	Lēg-	Pĕd-	Ămōr-	Cĭnĕr-	Pātr-	**ī**
Abl.	Lēg-	Pĕd-	Ămōr-	Cĭnĕr-	Pātr-	**ĕ**

Plural.

N. V. A.	Lēg-	Pĕd-	Ămōr-	Cĭnĕr-	Pātr-	**ēs**
Gen.	Lēg-	Pĕd-	Ămōr-	Cĭnĕr-	Pātr-	**um**
D. Abl.	Lēg-	Pĕd-	Ămōr-	Cĭnĕr-	Pātr-	**ĭbŭs**

(*b*) Neuter.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V. A.	**Nōmĕn**, *name*, or *O name*	**Nōmĭnă**, *names*, or *O names*
Gen.	**Nōmĭnĭs**, *of a name*	**NōmĭNum**, *of names*
Dat.	**Nōmĭnī**, *to* or *for a name*	**Nōmĭnĭbŭs**, *to* or *for names*
Abl.	**Nōmĭnĕ**, *by*, *with*, or *from a name*	**Nōmĭnĭbŭs**, *by*, *with*, or *from names.*

N. V. A.	**Ŏpŭs**, *a work*, or *O work*	**Ŏpĕră**, *works*, or *O works*
Gen.	**Ŏpĕrĭs**, *of a work*	**ŎpĕRum**, *of works*
Dat.	**Ŏpĕrī**, *to* or *for a work*	**Ŏpĕrĭbŭs**, *to* or *for works*
Abl.	**Ŏpĕrĕ**, *by*, *with*, or *from a work*	**Ŏpĕrĭbŭs**, *by*, *with*, or *from works.*

Decline also the Neuter Nouns:

Singular.

	Head.	*Lightning.*	*Leg.*	*Hard wood.*	*Body.*	
N. V. A.	Căpŭt	Fulgŭr	Crūs	Rōbŭr	Corpŭs	—
Gen.	Căpĭt-	Fulgŭr-	Crūr-	Rōbŏr-	Corpŏr-	**ĭs**
Dat.	Căpĭt-	Fulgŭr-	Crūr-	Rōbŏr-	Corpŏr-	**ī**
Abl.	Căpĭt-	Fulgŭr-	Crūr-	Rōbŏr-	Corpŏr-	**ĕ**

Plural.

N. V. A.	Căpĭt-	Fulgŭr-	Crūr-	Rōbŏr-	Corpŏr-	**ă**
Gen.	Căpĭr-	Fulgŭr-	Crūr-	Rōbŏr-	Corpŏr-	**um**
D. Abl.	Căpĭt-	Fulgŭr-	Crūr-	Rōbŏr-	Corpŏr-	**ĭbŭs**

§ 22. II. I-NOUNS.

(*a*) Masculine and Feminine.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	**ŏvĭs**, *a sheep*, or *O sheep*	**ŏvēs**, *sheep*, or *O sheep*, f.
Acc.	**ŏvem**, *a sheep*	**ŏvēs**, or **ŏvīs**,* *sheep*
Gen.	**ŏvĭs**, *of a sheep*	**ŏvĭum**, *of sheep*
Dat.	**ŏvī**, *to* or *for a sheep*	**ŏvĭbŭs**, *to* or *for sheep*
Abl.	**ŏvĕ**, *by, with*, or *from a sheep*	**ŏvĭbŭs**, *by, with*, or *from sheep.*

N. V.	**Nūbēs**, *a cloud*, or *O cloud*	**Nūbēs**, *clouds*, or *O clouds*, f.
Acc.	**Nūbem**, *a cloud*	**Nūbēs**, or **Nūbīs**,* *clouds*
Gen.	**Nūbĭs**, *of a cloud*	**Nūbĭum**, *of clouds*
Dat.	**Nūbī**, *to or for a cloud*	**Nūbĭbŭs**, *to* or *for clouds*
Abl.	**Nūbĕ**, *by, with, or from a cloud*	**Nūbĭbŭs**, *by, with, or from clouds.*

N. V.	**Dens**, *a tooth*, or *O tooth*	**Dentēs**, *teeth*, or *O teeth*, m.
Acc.	**Dentem**, *a tooth*	**Dentēs**, or **Dentīs**,* *teeth*
Gen.	**Dentĭs**, *of a tooth*	**Dentĭum**,† *of teeth*
Dat.	**Dentī**, *to* or *for a tooth*	**Dentĭbŭs**, *to* or *for teeth*
Abl.	**Dentĕ**, *by, with*, or *from a tooth*	**Dentĭbŭs**, *by, with*, or *from teeth.*

Decline also:

Singular.

	Cough, f.	*Key*, f.	*Canal*, m.	*Shower*, m.
N. V.	Tuss-**ĭs**	Clāv-**ĭs**	Cănāl-**ĭs**	Imbĕr
Acc.	Tuss-**im**	Clāv-**em** or **im**	Cănāl-**em**	Imbr-**em**
Gen.	Tuss-**ĭs**	Clāv-**ĭs**	Cănāl-**ĭs**	Imbr-**ĭs**
Dat.	Tuss-**ī**	Clāv-**ī**	Cănāl-**ī**	Imbr-**ī**
Abl.	Tuss-**ī**	Clāv-**ĕ** or **ī**	Cănāl-**ī**	Imbr-**ĕ** or **ī**

Plural.

N. V. A.	Tuss-**ēs**	Clāv-**ēs**	Cănāl-**ēs**	Imbr-**ēs** *
Gen.	Tuss-**ĭum**	Clāv-**ĭum**	Cănāl-**ĭum**	Imbr-**ĭum**
D. Abl.	Tuss-**ĭbŭs.**	Clāv-**ĭbŭs.**	Cănāl-**ĭbŭs.**	Imbr-**ĭbŭs.**

* The Accus. Plur. of I-nouns, Masc. and Fem., is also spelt with ending *īs*, and so appears in most ancient manuscripts, and in many editions of Latin authors.

† I-nouns in -ans, -ens, often drop *i* in Gen. Plur.; as părentum for părentĭum.

(*b*) NEUTER.

Singular.

	Bone.	*Sea.*	*Spur.*	*Animal.*
N. V. A.	**Ŏs**	**Mărĕ**	**Calcăr**	**Ănĭmăl**
Gen.	**Ossĭs**	**Mărĭs**	**Calcārĭs**	**Ănĭmālĭs**
Dat.	**Ossī**	**Mărī**	**Calcārī**	**Ănĭmālī**
Abl.	**Ossĕ**	**Mărī**	**Calcārī**	**Ănĭmālī**

Plural.

N. V. A.	**Ossă**	**Mărĭă**	**Calcārĭă**	**Ănĭmālĭă**
Gen.	**OssĭŬm**	**MărĭŬm**	**CalcārĭŬm**	**ĂnĭmālĭŬm**
D. Abl.	**Ossĭbŭs.**	**Mărĭbŭs.**	**Calcārĭbŭs.**	**Ănĭmālĭbŭs.**

THE FOURTH DECLENSION (U-nouns).

§ 23. Masculine and Feminine Substantives in the Fourth Declension form the Nominative in **ŭs**; Neuter Nouns in **ū**.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	**Grădŭs**, *a step*, or *O step*	**Grădūs**, *steps*, or *O steps*, m.
Acc.	**Grădum**, *a step*	**Grădūs**, *steps*
Gen.	**Grădūs**, *of a step*	**GrădŬum**, *of steps*
Dat.	**Grădŭī**, *to* or *for a step*	**Grădĭbŭs** (ŭbŭs), *to* or *for steps*
Abl.	**Grădū**, *by, with,* or *from a step*	**Grădĭbŭs** (ŭbŭs), *by, with,* or *from steps.*

N. V. A.	**Gĕnū**, *a knee*, or *O knee*	**Gĕnŭă**, *knees*, or *O knees*, n.
Gen.	**Gĕnūs**, *of a knee*	**GĕnŬum**, *of knees*
Dat.	**Gĕnū**, *to* or *for a knee*	**Gĕnĭbŭs** (ŭbŭs), *to* or *for knees*
Abl.	**Gĕnū**, *by, with,* or *from a knee*	**Gĕnĭbŭs** (ŭbŭs), *by, with,* or *from knees.*

THE FIFTH DECLENSION (E-nouns).

§ 24. The Fifth Declension contains Feminine Nouns with Nominative in **ēs**. (Concerning dĭēs, see § 31.)

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	**Dĭēs**, *a day*, or *O day*	**Dĭēs**, *days*, or *O days*, c.
Acc.	**Dĭem**, *a day*	**Dĭēs**, *days*
Gen.	**Dĭēī**, *of a day*	**DĭĒrum**, *of days*
Dat.	**Dĭēī**, *to* or *for a day*	**Dĭēbŭs**, *to* or *for days*
Abl.	**Dĭē**, *by, with,* or *from a day*	**Dĭēbŭs**, *by, with,* or *from days.*

§ 25. ANOMALIES OF THE NOUN.

(1) Many Nouns are used in the Singular only: as,
Argentum, aurum, ferrum, plebs, justĭtĭă,
Vēr, aevum, lētum, sanguĭs, pŭĕrĭtĭă.

Note.—Add āēr, *air* (Acc. S. āĕră or āĕrem), aether, *sky* (Acc. S. aethĕră or aethĕrem), with many more.

(2) Many are used in the Plural only:
As, Mānēs, lŏcŭlī, Pĕnātēs,
Dīvĭtĭae, cūnae, nūgae, grātēs,
With armă, mūnĭă, māgālĭă,
And festive seasons, as Flōrālĭă.

(3) Some Nouns change their meaning in the Plural:
As, ŏpĕră, *exertion*;
Ŏpĕrae, *working-people*.

(4) Many Nouns are Defective in Case:
As, dăpĭs, ŏpĭs, vīs.

(5) Some Nouns take forms from *two* Declensions:
As, laurŭs, *bay-tree* (Gen. ī and ūs).

Note.—These are called Hĕtĕrŏclĭtă.

(6) Some vary the Gender:
As, jŏcŭs, *jest*, Pl. jŏcī and jŏcă;
Lŏcŭs, *place*, Pl. lŏcī and lŏcă;
Frēnum, *bit*, Pl. frēnī and frēnă;
Rastrum, *harrow*, Pl. rastrī and rastră.

Note.—These are called Hĕtĕrŏgĕnĕă.

a. Decline the Defective Nouns:

			Singular.			
	Feast, f.	*Fruit*, f.	*Help*, f.	*Prayer*, f.	*Change*, f.	
N. V.	—	—	—	—	—	—
Acc.	Dăp-	Frūg-	Ŏp-	Prĕc-	Vĭc-	**em**
Gen.	Dăp-	Frūg-	Ŏp-	—	Vĭc-	**ĭs**
Dat.	Dăp-	Frūg-	—	Prĕc-	—	**ī**
Abl.	Dăp-	Frūg-	Ŏp-	Prĕc-	Vĭc-	**ĕ**

Full Plural, with endings **ēs, um, ĭbŭs**, as § 21: except vĭc-**ĭum.**

S.N. Vīs, *strength*, f. Acc. vim. Abl. vī. Pl. vīrēs, vīrĭum, vīrĭbŭs.

b. The Heteroclite Noun Dŏmŭs, *house*, f., is like Grădŭs; but forms Sing. Dat. -ūī *or* -ō. Abl. ō. Plur. Acc. -ūs *or* -ōs. Gen. ŭum *or* ōrum. Dŏmī, *at home.*

GENDER OF NOUNS.

§ 26. General Rules.

(1) The Gender of a Latin Noun is shown by Meaning or by Form.

(2) Males, Months, Winds, and People, are always Masculine, and most Names of Mountains and Rivers.

(3) Females and Islands are Feminine, and most Names of Countries, Cities, and Trees.

(4) Nouns indeclinable are Neuter: as, fās, nĕfās, and the Verb-noun Infinitive;

Est summum nĕfās fallĕrĕ,
Deceit is gross impiety.

(5) Common are to either sex:
Artĭfex and ŏpĭfex,
Convīvă, vātēs, advĕnă,
Testĭs, cīvĭs, incŏlă,
Părens, săcerdōs, custōs, vindex,
Ădŏlescens, infans, index,
Jūdex, hērēs, cŏmĕs, dux,
Princeps, mūnĭceps, conjux,
Obsĕs, ālĕs, interprĕs,
Auctŏr, exŭl; and with these
Bōs, dāmă, talpă, tĭgrĭs, grūs,
Cănĭs and anguĭs, serpens, sūs.*

§ 27. Gender in the First Declension.

Princ. Rule.—Substantives of the First Declension in *ă*, *ē*, are Feminine. Substantives in *ās*, *ēs*, are Masculine.

Exc. Nouns denoting males in *ă*
Are by meaning Mascŭlă;
And added to the Males must be
Hādrīă, *the Hadriatic Sea.*

* Many of these words (with others, as hostĭs, hospĕs, mīlĕs, praesĕs, augŭr, aurīgă) are rarely found Feminine. A few are rarely Masculine: as, dāmă, talpă, tĭgrĭs, grūs, sūs. Some are equally used in each Gender, when Singular: as, părens, conjux, săcerdōs, vātēs, cŏmĕs, dux, cănĭs: in Plural generally Masculine.

§ 28. GENDER IN THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Princ. Rule.—Substantives of the Second Declension in *ŭs*, *ĕr*, are Masculine. Substantives in *um* are Neuter.

Exc. Fēmĭnīnă stand in *ŭs*,
Alvŭs, arctŭs, carbăsŭs,
Cŏlŭs, hŭmŭs, pampĭnŭs,
Vannŭs; names of Plants, as pĭrŭs;
Names of Jewels, as sapphīrŭs.
Neuter, pĕlăgŭs and vīrŭs.
Vulgŭs Neuter commonly,
Rarely Masculine, we see.

§ 29. GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Princ. Rule. I.—Substantives of the Third Declension are Masculine which end in *o*, *or*, *os*, *er*; also Imparisyllables in *es*.

Exc. (1) Substantives in *dō* and *gō*
Gĕnŭs Fēmĭnīnum show.
But lĭgō, ordō, praedō, cardō,
Are Mascŭlă; and Common margō.

(2) Abstract Nouns in *ĭo* call
Fēmĭnīnă, one and all:
Masculă will only be
Things that you may touch or see,
(As curcŭlĭō, vespertīlĭō,
Pŭgĭō, scīpĭŏ, and pāpĭlĭō,)
With the Nouns that number show,
Such as ternĭŏ, sēnĭŏ.

(3) Ēchō Fēmĭnīnum name:
Cărō (carnĭs) is the same.

(4) Fēmĭnīnum call arbŏr;
Neuter aequŏr, marmŏr, cŏr.

(5) Of the Substantives in *os*,
Fēmĭnīna cōs and dōs:
While, of Latin Nouns, alone
Neuter are ŏs (ossĭs), *bone*,
And ōs (ōrĭs), *mouth*: a few
Greek in *ŏs* are Neuter too.*

(6) Many Neuters end in *er*,
Sīlĕr, ăcĕr, verbĕr, vēr,
Tūbĕr, ūbĕr, and cădāvĕr,
Pĭpĕr, ĭtĕr, and păpāvĕr.

* As mĕlŏs, *melody*; ĕpŏs, *epic poem*.

(7) Fēmĭnīnă, compēs, tĕgĕs,
Mercēs, mergĕs, quiēs, sĕgĕs,
Though their Genitives increase
With the Neuters reckon aes.

Princ. Rule. II.—Substantives of the Third Declension are Feminine which end in *is*, *as*, *aus*, *x*; or in *s* following another Consonant; also Parisyllables in *es*.

Exc. (1) Many Nouns in *is* we find
To the Mascŭlă assigned:
Amnĭs, axĭs, caulĭs, collĭs,
Clūnĭs, crīnĭs, fascĭs, follĭs,
Fustĭs, ignĭs, orbĭs, ensĭs,
Pānĭs, piscĭs, postĭs, mensĭs,
Torrĭs, unguĭs, and cănālĭs,
Vectĭs, vermĭs, and nātālĭs,
Lăpĭs, sanguĭs, cŭcŭmĭs,
Pulvĭs, cassēs, Mānēs, glīs.

(2) Chiefly Mascŭlă we view,
Sometimes Fēmĭnīnă too,
Callĭs, sentĭs, fūnĭs, fīnĭs,
Torquĭs, and, in poets, cĭnĭs.

(3) Mascŭlă are ădămās,
Ĕlĕphās, mās, gĭgās, ās:
Văs (vădĭs) too as Male is known,
Vās (vāsĭs) as a Neuter Noun.

(4) Most are Mascŭlă in *ex*:
Fēmĭnīnă, forfex, lex,
Nex, sŭpellex: Common, pūmex,
Imbrex, ŏbex, sĭlex, rŭmex.

(5) Mascŭlă appear in *ix*,
Fornix, phoenix, and călix.

(6) Mascŭlă are fons and mons,
Chălybs, hўdrops, gryps, and pons,
Rŭdens, torrens, dens, and clĭens,
Fractions of the ās, as trĭens;
Add to Mascŭlă trĭdens,
Occĭdens and ŏrĭens,
Bĭdens (*hoe*): but bĭdens (*sheep*)
With the Fēmĭnīnă keep.

(7) Mascŭlă are found in *ēs*
Verrēs and ăcīnăcēs.

Princ. Rule. III.—Substantives of the Third Declension are Neuter which end in *ar*, *ur*, *us*, *ă*, *ĕ*, *c*, *l*, *n*, *t*.

Exc. (1) Masculă are found in *ur*,
Furfŭr, turtŭr, vultŭr, fūr.

(2) Fēmĭnīnă, some in *ūs*
Keep *ū* long, as, servītūs,
With jŭventūs, virtūs, sălūs,
Sĕnectūs, tellūs, incūs, pălūs.

(3) Also pĕcŭs (pĕcŭdĭs)
Of the Female Gender is.

(4) Masculă are found in *us*
Lĕpŭs (lĕpŏrĭs) and mūs.

(5) Masculă in *l* are mūgĭl,
Consŭl, săl and sōl, with pŭgĭl.

(6) Masculă are rēn and splēn,
Pectĕn, delphīn, attăgēn.

(7) Fēmĭnīnă some in *ōn*;
Gorgōn, sindōn, halcўōn.

§ 30. GENDER IN THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

Princ. Rule.—Substantives of the Fourth Declension in *ŭs* are Masculine, in *ū* Neuter.

Exc. Fēmĭnīnă, trees in *ŭs*,
With trĭbŭs, ăcŭs, portĭcŭs,
Dŏmŭs, nŭrŭs, sŏcrŭs, ănŭs,
Īdūs (īdŭum) and mănŭs.*

§ 31. GENDER IN THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

Princ. Rule.—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are Feminine.

Exc. Dĭēs in the Singular is Common, in the Plural Masculine.

---

* See English of Nouns at p. 94.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 32. A. Adjectives of Three Endings, in *ŭs*, *ă*, *um*, or *ĕr*, *ă*, *um*, follow the Second and First Declensions.

like	*Masculine*	*Feminine* like mensă	*Neuter* like bellum	
Dŏmĭnŭs .	Bŏnŭs	bŏnă	bŏnum	*good*
Pŭĕr . . .	Tĕnĕr	tĕnĕră	tĕnĕrum	*tender*
Măgistĕr .	Nĭgĕr	nĭgră	nĭgrum	*black*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**Bŏnŭs**	**bŏnă**	**bŏnum**	**Bŏnī**	**bŏnae**	**bŏnă**
Voc.	**Bŏnĕ**	**bŏnă**	**bŏnum**	**Bŏnī**	**bŏnae**	**bŏnă**
Acc.	**Bŏnum**	**bŏnam**	**bŏnum**	**Bŏnōs**	**bŏnās**	**bŏnă**
Gen.	**Bŏnī**	**bŏnae**	**bŏnī**	**Bŏnōrum**	**bŏnārum**	**bŏnōrum**
Dat.	**Bŏnō**	**bŏnae**	**bŏnō**	**Bŏnīs**	**bŏnīs**	**bŏnīs**
Abl.	**Bŏnō**	**bŏnā**	**bŏnō**	**Bŏnīs**	**bŏnīs**	**bŏnīs**

Singular.

	Tĕnĕr, tĕnĕr-ă, tĕnĕr-**um**			Nĭgĕr, nĭgr-ă, nĭgr-**um**			
		M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Acc.	Tĕnĕr-	**um**	**am**	**um**	Nĭgr-	**um**	**am**	**um**
Gen.	Tĕnĕr-	**ī**	**ae**	**ī**	Nĭgr-	**ī**	**ae**	**ī**
Dat.	Tĕnĕr-	**ō**	**ae**	**ō**	Nĭgr-	**ō**	**ae**	**ō**
Abl.	Tĕnĕr-	**ō**	**ā**	**ō**	Nĭgr-	**ō**	**ā**	**ō**

Plural.

N. V.	Tĕnĕr-	**ī**	**ae**	**ă**	Nigr-	**ī**	**ae**	**ă**
Acc.	Tĕnĕr-	**ōs**	**ās**	**ă**	Nĭgr-	**ōs**	**ās**	**ă**
Gen.	Tĕnĕr-	**ōrum**	**ārum**	**ōrum**	Nĭgr-	**ōrum**	**ārum**	**ōrum**
D. Abl.	Tĕnĕr-	**īs**	**īs**	**īs**	Nĭgr-	**īs**	**īs**	**īs**

Decline:

as bŏnŭs:
cārŭs, *dear*
dŭbĭŭs, *doubtful*
dūrŭs, *hard*
jūcundŭs, *pleasant*
mălŭs, *bad*
pallĭdŭs, *pale.*

as tĕnĕr:
aspĕr, *rough*
lăcĕr, *torn*
lĭbĕr, *free*
mĭsĕr, *wretched*
cornĭgĕr, *horned*
frūgĭfĕr, *fruitful.**

as nĭgĕr:
aegĕr, *sick*
ātĕr, *jet-black*
crēbĕr, *frequent*
pulchĕr, *beautiful*
rŭbĕr, *red*
săcĕr, *sacred.*

* And many other Adjectives compounded with the Verbs gĕrō, fĕrō. Dextĕr, *at the right hand, propitious*, is declined either as tĕnĕr or nĭgĕr.

§ 33. B. All other Adjectives follow the Third Declension: as, mĕlĭŏr, *better*; tristĭs, *sad*; fēlix, *happy*; ingens, *vast*.

Singular.

	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N. V.	**Mĕlĭŏr**	**mĕlĭŭs**	**Tristĭs**	**tristĕ**
Acc.	**Mĕlĭōrem**	**mĕlĭŭs**	**Tristem**	**tristĕ**
Gen.	**Mĕlĭōrĭs**		**Tristĭs**	
Dat.	**Mĕlĭōrī**		**Tristī**	
Abl.	**Mĕlĭōrĕ** *or* **ī**		**Tristī**	

Plural.

N. V. A.	**Mĕlĭōrēs**	**mĕlĭōră**	**Tristēs**	**tristĭă**
Gen.	**Mĕlĭōrum**		**Tristĭum**	
D. Abl.	**Mĕlĭōrĭbŭs.**		**Tristĭbŭs.**	

Singular.

	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N. V.	**Fēlix**		**Ingens**	
Acc.	**Fēlīcem**	**fēlix**	**Ingentem**	**ingens**
Gen.	**Fēlīcĭs**		**Ingentĭs**	
Dat.	**Fēlīcī**		**Ingentī**	
Abl.	**Fēlīcī***		**Ingentī** *or* **ĕ**	

Plural.

N. V. A.	**Fēlīcēs**	**fēlīcĭă**	**Ingentēs**	**ingentĭă**
Gen.	**Fēlīcĭum**		**Ingentĭum**	
D. Abl.	**Fēlīcĭbŭs.**		**Ingentĭbŭs.**	

C. Adjectives in *er*, of the Third Declension, have Three Endings in Nom. Sing.: as, N. cĕlĕr, cĕlĕrĭs, cĕlĕrĕ, *swift*; N. ācĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ, *keen*.

Singular.

	Cĕlĕr, cĕlĕr-**ĭs**, cĕlĕr-**ĕ**			Ācĕr, ācr-**ĭs**, ācr-**ĕ**		
	M.F.	N.		M.F.	N.
Acc.	Cĕlĕr- **em**	**ĕ**		Ācr- **em**	**ĕ**
Gen.	Cĕlĕr- **ĭs**			Ācr- **ĭs**	
D. Abl.	Cĕlĕr- **ī**			Ācr- **ī**	

Plural.

N. V. A.	Cĕlĕr- **ēs**	**ĭă**	Ācr- **ēs**	**ĭă**
Gen.	Cĕlĕr- **um**		Ācr- **ĭum**	
D. Abl.	Cĕlĕr- **ĭbŭs**		Ācr- **ĭbŭs**	

Decline:

as mĕlĭŏr:
audācĭŏr, *bolder*
dūrĭŏr, *harder*.

as fēlix:
audax (āc-), *bold*
fĕrox (ōc-), *haughty*.

as cĕlĕr:
(none).

as tristĭs:
brĕvĭs, *short*
fācĭlĭs, *easy*.

as ingens:
ămans, *loving*
săpĭens, *wise*.

as ācĕr:
ălăcĕr, *brisk*
ĕquestĕr, *knightly*.

* Rarely *ĕ*.

§ 34. NUMERAL AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

Some Numeral and Pronominal Adjectives form Gen. Sing. in iŭs, and Dat. Sing. in ī: as, ūnŭs, *one*; ălĭŭs, *other, another*; altĕr, *one of two, the other*; ŭtĕr, *which of two.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**Ūnŭs**	**ūnă**	**ūnum**	**Ūnī**	**ūnæ**	**ūnă**
Acc.	**Ūnum**	**ūnam**	**ūnum**	**Ūnōs**	**ūnās**	**ūnă**
Gen.	**Ūnĭŭs**	**ūnĭŭs**	**ūnĭŭs**	**Ūnōrum**	**ūnārum**	**ūnōrum**
Dat.	**Ūnī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**Ūnīs**	**ūnīs**	**ūnīs**
Abl.	**Ūnō**	**ūnā**	**ūnō**	**Ūnīs**	**ūnīs**	**ūnīs**

Nom.	**Ălĭŭs**	**ălĭă**	**ălĭŭd**	**Ălĭī**	**ălĭæ**	**ălĭă**
Acc.	**Ălĭum**	**ălĭam**	**ălĭŭd**	**Ălĭōs**	**ălĭās**	**ălĭă**
Gen.	**Ălĭīus**	**ălĭŭs**	**ălĭŭs**	**Ălĭōrum**	**ălĭārum**	**ălĭōrum**
Dat.	**Ălĭī**	**ălĭī**	**ălĭī**	**Ălĭīs**	**ălĭīs**	**ălĭīs**
Abl.	**Ălĭō**	**ălĭā**	**ălĭō**	**Ălĭīs**	**ălĭīs**	**ălĭīs**

		Singular.					
Nom.	Altĕr, altĕr-**ă**, altĕr-**um**				Ŭtĕr, ŭtr-**ă**, ŭtr-**um**		
		M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Acc.	Altĕr-	**um**	**am**	**um**	Ūtr-	**um**	**am**	**um**
Gen.	Altĕr-	**ĭŭs**	**ĭŭs**	**ĭŭs**	Ūtr-	**ĭŭs**	**ĭŭs**	**ĭŭs**
Dat.	Altĕr-	**ī**	**ī**	**ī**	Ūtr-	**ī**	**ī**	**ī**
Abl.	Altĕr-	**ō**	**ā**	**ō**	Ūtr-	**ō**	**ā**	**ō**

	Plural.							
Nom.	Altĕr-	**ī**	**æ**	**ă**	Ūtr-	**ī**	**æ**	**ă**
Acc.	Altĕr-	**ōs**	**ās**	**ă**	Ūtr-	**ōs**	**ās**	**ă**
Gen.	Altĕr-	**ōrum**	**ārum**	**ōrum**	Ūtr-	**ōrum**	**ārum**	**ōrum**
D. Abl.	Altĕr-	**īs**	**īs**	**īs**	Ūtr-	**īs**	**īs**	**īs**

Decline like ūnŭs: ullŭs, *any at all*; nullŭs, *none, no*; sōlŭs, *alone*; tōtŭs, *whole.*

Like ŭtĕr: neutĕr, *neither*; ŭterquĕ, *each* (of two); ŭtervīs, ŭterlĭbĕt, *which you will;* ŭtercumquĕ, *whichever of the two.* The suffixes -quĕ, -vīs, -lĭbĕt, -cumquĕ, are appended to each case-form: as, ŭtrĭusquĕ, ŭtrīvīs, utrōlĭbĕt, ŭtrumcumquĕ. Altĕrŭtĕr, *one or the other*, is usually declined as ŭtĕr. But Gen. altĕrĭŭs-ŭtrĭŭs is found.

	Dŭŏ, *two.* Plural.			Trēs, *three.* Plural.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. F.	N.
Nom.	**Dŭŏ**	**dŭae**	**dŭŏ**	**Trēs**	**trĭă**
Acc.	**Dŭōs** *or* **dŭŏ**	**dŭās**	**dŭŏ**	**Trēs**	**trĭă**
Gen.	**Dŭōrum**	**dŭārum**	**dŭōrum**	**Trĭum**	**trĭum**
D. Abl.	**Dŭōbŭs**	**dŭābŭs**	**dŭōbŭs.**	**Trĭbŭs**	**trĭbŭs.**

Decline as dŭŏ: ambō, *both.*

The other Cardinal Numbers (quattŭŏr, *four*; quinquĕ, *five*: sex, *six*; septem, *seven*; octŏ, *eight*; nŏvem, *nine*; dĕcem, *ten*, &c.; to centum, *a hundred*) are undeclined. Millĕ, *a thousand*, is an indeclinable Adjective. The Neuter Plural, millĭă, *thousands*, is a Substantive, and declined like Mărĭă.

COMPARISON.

§ 35. The Adjective is compared by Three Degrees; the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative: as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Dūrŭs, *hard*	dūrĭŏr, *harder*	dūrissĭmŭs, *hardest.*

The Comparative may be formed from the Positive by changing **i** or **is** of the Genitive into **ĭŏr.**

The Superlative may be formed from the Positive by changing **ī** or **is** of the Genitive into **issĭmŭs**: as,

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
Dūrŭs, *hard*	Gen. dūr-**ī**	dūr-**ĭŏr**	dūr-**issĭmŭs**
Brĕvĭs, *short*	,, brĕv-**ĭs**	brĕv-**ĭŏr**	brĕv-**issĭmŭs**
Audāx, *bold*	,, audāc-**ĭs**	audāc-**ĭŏr**	audāc-**issĭmŭs.**

(1) Adjectives in *-er* form the Superlative by adding *-rĭmŭs* to the Nominative: as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Pulchĕr, *beautiful*	pulchr-**ĭŏr**	pulcher-**rĭmŭs**
Cĕlĕr, *swift*	cĕlĕr-**ĭŏr**	cĕler-**rĭmŭs.**

Vĕtŭs, *ancient*, forms Superl. vĕter-**rĭmŭs.**

(2) The following form the Superlative by changing *ĭs* into *lĭmŭs*:

Făcĭlĭs, *easy*	Sĭmĭlĭs, *like*	Grăcĭlĭs, *slender*
Difficĭlĭs, *difficult*	Dissĭmĭlĭs, *unlike*	Hŭmĭlĭs, *lowly.*

Superl. făcil-**lĭmŭs**, sĭmil-**lĭmŭs**, grăcil-**lĭmŭs**, hŭmil-**lĭmŭs**, &c.

§ 36. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Bŏnŭs, *good*	mĕlĭŏr	optĭmŭs.
Mălŭs, *bad*	pējŏr	pessĭmŭs.
Magnŭs, *great*	mājŏr	maxĭmŭs.
Parvŭs, *small*	mĭnŏr	mĭnĭmŭs.
Multŭs, *much*	(plūs, Neut.)	plūrĭmus.
Nēquam, *worthless*	nēquĭŏr	nēquissĭmŭs.

Note 1. The Comparative of multŭs has no Masc. or Fem. Singular; but full Plural: Nom. Acc. plūrēs, plūrā, Gen. plūrĭum, D. Abl. plūrĭbŭs.

Note 2. Dīvĕs, *rich*, often contracts dīvĭt- into dīt-: as, Comp. dīvĭtĭŏr or dītĭŏr, Superl. dīvĭtissĭmŭs or dītissĭmŭs.

Note 3. Sĕnex, *old* (generally *an old man*), has Comp. sĕnĭŏr. Jŭvĕnĭs, *young* (generally *a youth*, Fem. not used), has Comp. jūnĭŏr, Masc. or Fem. But *older* is often nātū mājŏr, or mājŏr only; *eldest*, nātū maxĭmŭs, or maxĭmŭs; *younger*, nātū mĭnŏr, or mĭnŏr; *youngest*, nātū mĭnĭmŭs, or mĭnĭmŭs.

Note 4. Adjectives of Position spring from Prepositions:—

Preposition.	Positive Adj.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Ē, ex, *out of*	extĕrŭs, *outside*	extĕrĭŏr	extrēmŭs (extĭmŭs)
Intrā, *within*	—	intĕrĭŏr	intĭmŭs
Sŭpĕr, *above*	sŭpĕrŭs, *high above*	sŭpĕrĭŏr	sŭprēmŭs (summŭs)
Infrā, *below*	infĕrŭs, *deep below*.	infĕrĭŏr	infĭmŭs (īmŭs)
Prae, *before*	—	prĭŏr	prīmŭs, *first*
Post, *after*	postĕrŭs, *next after*	postĕrĭŏr	postrēmŭs (postŭmŭs)
Cĭtrā, *on near side*	—	cĭtĕrĭŏr	cĭtĭmŭs
Ultrā, *beyond*	—	ultĕrĭŏr	ultĭmŭs, *last*
Prŏpĕ, *near*	—	prŏpĭŏr	proxĭmŭs
Dē, *down from*	—	dētĕrĭŏr, *worse*	dēterrĭmŭs, *worst*

Obs. Adjectives in *us* pure* are compared with măgĭs, maxĭmē; as, dŭbĭŭs, *doubtful*, măgĭs dŭbĭŭs, maxĭmē dŭbĭŭs. But plĭŭs forms plĭssĭmŭs. Adjectives in -dĭcŭs, -fĭcŭs, -vŏlŭs change ŭs into Comp. -entĭŏr, Superl. -entissĭmŭs; as, magnĭfĭcŭs, magnĭfĭcentĭŏr, magnĭfĭcentissĭmŭs. Ōcĭŏr, *swifter*, ōcissĭmŭs, has no Positive. Many Adjectives are not compared at all: some have a Comparative without a Superlative, many a Superlative without a Comparative.

§ 37. Adverbs derived from Adjectives imitate their Comparison, with endings, Comparative *ŭs*, Superlative *ē*.

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Adj.	Dignŭs, *worthy*	dignĭŏr	dignissĭmŭs.
Adv.	Dignē, *worthily*	dignĭŭs	dignissĭmē.
Adj.	Grăvĭs, *weighty*	grăvĭŏr	grăvissĭmŭs.
Adv.	Grăvĭtĕr, *weightily*	grăvĭŭs	grăvissĭmē.
a. So:	Saepĕ, *often*	saepĭŭs	saepissĭmē.
	Dīū, *long*	dīūtĭŭs	dīūtissĭmē.
But:	Multum, *much*	plūs	plūrĭmum.
	Magnŏpĕrē, *greatly*	măgĭs, *more*	maxĭmē.

* A pure Syllable is one which follows a Vowel.

PRONOUNS.

§ 38. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns are purely Substantival; the rest are generally Adjectival, but are often used Substantively.

(1) PERSONAL.

1. First Person.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	**Ĕgŏ**, *I*	**Nōs**, *we*
Acc.	**Mē**, *me*	**Nōs**, *us*
Gen.	**Mĕī**, *of me*	**Nostrī**, *or* **Nostrum**, *of us*
Dat.	**Mĭhĭ**, *to* or *for me*	**Nōbīs**, *to* or *for us*
Abl.	**Mē**, (*with*) *me*	**Nōbīs**, (*with*) *us*.

2. Second Person.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	**Tū**, *thou*	**Vōs**, *ye*
Acc.	**Tē**, *thee*	**Vōs**, *you*
Gen.	**Tŭī**, *of thee*	**Vestrī**, *or* **Vestrum**, *of you*
Dat.	**Tĭbĭ**, *to* or *for thee*	**Vōbīs**, *to* or *for you*
Abl.	**Tē**, (*with*) *thee*	**Vōbīs**, (*with*) *you*.

(2) REFLEXIVE (Third Person).

Singular and Plural.

Nom.	(wanting.)
Acc.	**Sē** (sēsē), *himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves*
Gen.	**Sŭī**, *of himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves*
Dat.	**Sĭbĭ**, *to* or *for himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves*
Abl.	**Sē** (sēsē), (*with*) *himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves*.

(3) POSSESSIVE.

As Bŏnŭs, decline:

Mĕŭs, mĕă, mĕum, *my, mine.*
Tŭŭs, tŭă, tŭum, *thy, thine.*
Sŭŭs, sŭă, sŭum, *his, her, its, their own.*
Cūjŭs, cūjă, cūjum, *whose; whose?*

As Nĭgĕr:

Nostĕr, nostră, nostrum, *our.*
Vestĕr, vestră, vestrum, *your.*

Note. Mĕŭs has Vocative Masculine mī. Tŭŭs, sŭŭs, have none.

(4) DEMONSTRATIVE.

1. Simple or Unemphatic.

Ĭs, *that* (or *he, she, it*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	**Ĭs**	**ĕă**	**ĭd**	**Ĭī**	**ĕae**	**ĕă**
Acc.	**Ĕum**	**ĕam**	**ĭd**	**Ĕōs**	**ĕās**	**ĕă**
Gen.	**Ējŭs**	**ējŭs**	**ējŭs**	**Ĕōrum**	**ĕārum**	**ĕōrum**
Dat.	**Ĕī**	**ĕī**	**ĕī**	**Ĭīs** *or* **ĕīs**		
Abl.	**Ĕō**	**ĕā**	**ĕō**	**Ĭīs** *or* **ĕīs**		

2. Emphatic.

Hĭc, *this* (*near me*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	**Hĭc**	**haec**	**hōc**	**Hī**	**hae**	**haec**
Acc.	**Hunc**	**hanc**	**hōc**	**Hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
Gen.	**Hūjŭs**	**hūjŭs**	**hūjŭs**	**Hōrum**	**hārum**	**hōrum**
Dat.	**Huic**	**huic**	**huic**	**Hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**
Abl.	**Hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**Hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**

Illĕ, *that* (*yonder*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	**Illĕ**	**illă**	**illŭd**	**Illī**	**illae**	**illă**
Acc.	**Illum**	**illam**	**illŭd**	**Illōs**	**illās**	**illă**
Gen.	**Illĭŭs**	**illĭŭs**	**illĭŭs**	**Illōrum**	**illārum**	**illōrum**
Dat.	**Illī**	**illī**	**illī**	**Illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**
Abl.	**Illō**	**illā**	**illō**	**Illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**

Istĕ, *that* (*near you*), is declined like Illĕ.

(5) DEFINITIVE. (Ĭdem, *same*; ipsĕ, *self*.)

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	**Ĭdem**	**ĕădem**	**ĭdem**	**Ĭīdem**	**ĕaedem**	**ĕădem**
Acc.	**Ĕundem**	**ĕandem**	**ĭdem**	**Ĕosdem**	**ĕasdem**	**ĕădem**
Gen.	**Ējusdem**	**ējusdem**	**ējusdem**	**Ĕōrundem**	**ĕārundem**	**ĕōrundem**
Dat.	**Ĕīdem**	**ĕīdem**	**ĕīdem**	**Ĭisdem** *or* **ĕisdem**		
Abl.	**Ĕōdem**	**ĕādem**	**ĕōdem**	**Ĭisdem** *or* **ĕisdem.**		

Ipsĕ is declined like Illĕ, but with Neuter Singular N. Acc. ipsum. It forms a Superlative ipsissĭmŭs, *very self*.

(6) RELATIVE. (Quī, *who*, or *which*.)

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	**Quī**	**quae**	**quŏd**	**Quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Acc.	**Quem**	**quam**	**quŏd**	**Quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Gen.	**Cūjŭs**	**cūjŭs**	**cūjŭs**	**Quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**Cui**	**cui**	**cui**	**Quĭbŭs** *or* **quīs**		
Abl.	**Quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**Quĭbŭs** *or* **quīs.**		

(7) INTERROGATIVE.

	Singular.			
Nom.	**Quĭs**	**(quĭs)**	**quĭd** } *	*who*, or *what?*
	Quī	**quae**	**quŏd** } *	
Acc.	**Quem**	**quam**	**quĭd**	
	Quem	**quam**	**quŏd**	
	&c.	&c.	&c.	

In the other forms as Relative.

(8) INDEFINITE.

	Singular.			
	Quĭs	**quă**	**quĭd** } *	*any one.*
	Quī	**quae**	**quŏd** } *	
	Quem	**quam**	**quĭd**	
	Quem	**quam**	**quŏd**	
	&c.	&c.	&c.	

In the other forms as Relative.

Indefinite Pl. Nom. Quī, quae, quă *or* quae.

(9) COMPOUNDS OF RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE.

1. Quisnam, quidnam; quīnam, quaenam, quodnam, *who, what?*
2. Ecquĭs (for en-quĭs), ecquă, ecquĭd? Ecquī, ecquae, ecquŏd, *anyone?* (Interrogative). So Numquĭs, sīquĭs, &c.
3. Ălĭquĭs, ălĭquă, ălĭquĭd; Ălĭquī, ălĭquă, ălĭquŏd, *some one.*
4. Quispĭam, quaepĭam, quippĭam (quodpĭam), *anyone.*
5. Quisquam, quicquam; Genitive, cūjusquam, &c., *anyone at all.*
6. Quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), *a certain one.*
7. Quīcumquĕ, quaecumquĕ, quodcumquĕ, *whosoever, whatsoever.*
8. Quisquĭs, *whosoever*, quidquĭd, *whatsoever.*
9. Quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs (quodvīs), *any you will.*
10. Quīlĭbĕt, quaelĭbĕt, quidlĭbĕt (quodlĭbĕt), *any you please.*
11. Quisquĕ, quaequĕ, quicquĕ; Quisquĕ, quaequĕ, quodquĕ, *each.* So Ūnusquisquĕ, ūnăquaequĕ, ūnumquicquĕ (-quodquĕ), *each one.*

a. These Compounds are declined as their Primitives, the undeclined suffix or prefix accompanying each case, as Gen. cūjusnam, ălĭcūjŭs, cūjuscumquĕ, &c., &c.

Note. Correlatives include an Interrogative, Demonstrative, Relative, Indefinite, Universals: as, quĭs?—ĭs—quī—quĭs (ălĭquĭs)—quĭcumquĕ (quisquĭs), &c.

The Pronominal Correlatives qualis, &c.

Interrog.	Demonst.	Relat.	Indefinite.	Univ.
Quālīs, *of what kind?*	tālīs, *such*	quālīs, *as*		quāliscumquĕ, *of what kind soever.*
Quantŭs, *how great?*	tantŭs, *so great*	quantŭs, *as*	ălĭquantŭs, *of some size*	quantuscumquĕ, *how great soever.*
Quŏt, *how many?*	tŏt, *so many*	quŏt, *as*	ălĭquŏt, *some few*	quotcumquĕ, *how many soever.*

* The forms Quĭs, quĭd, are Substantival; Quī, quŏd, Adjectival.

VERBS.

§ 39. The Verb has two Voices: (1) the Active Voice; as, ămō, *I love*: (2) the Passive; as, ămŏr, *I am loved.*

§ 40. A Deponent Verb is chiefly Passive in form, but Active in sense; as, hortŏr, *I exhort.*

§ 41. Active and Deponent Verbs are either—

(1) Transitive, acting on an object: as, ămō ĕum, *I love him*; or
(2) Intransitive, not acting on an object: as, stō, *I stand.*

Obs. Verbs Intransitive have no personal Passive: see § 76.

§ 42. The Verb has two parts:

I. Finite. II. Infinite.

I. The Verb Finite has three Moods.

(1) The Indicative; as, ămō, *I love.*
(2) The Conjunctive; as, ămem (variously rendered: see § 66).
(3) The Imperative; as, ămā, *love thou.*

§ 43. Time is expressed by Tenses.

There are six Tense-forms of the Verb Finite: the Present, Simple-Future, Imperfect, Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect. Other Tenses are formed by the verb Sum, essĕ (*to be*), with Participles.

§ 44. Tenses have each (1) two Numbers, Singular and Plural; and (2) three Persons in each Number.

The First Person speaks: as, ămō, *I love*; ămāmŭs, *we love.*
The Second Person is spoken to: as, ămās, *thou lovest*; ămātĭs, *ye love.*
The Third Person is spoken of: as, ămăt, *he loves*; ămant, *they love.*

Obs. The Pronouns, ĕgŏ, nōs, tū, vōs, ĭs, ī, are severally implied in the Personal Endings.

§ 45. II. The Verb Infinite consists of Verb-nouns:

(1) The Infinitive, having several Tense-forms.
(2) The Gerund, } Verbal Substantives, which supply Cases
(3) The two Supines, } to the Infinitive.
(4) Participles, or Verbal Adjectives, one of which ends in dŭs, and is called Gerundive.

§ 46. There are Four regular CONJUGATIONS (three of Vowel Verbs, one of Consonant and U-verbs), of which the PRESENT-STEM and CHARACTER are shown in the Imperative or Infinitive.

ACTIVE VERBS.

		Ind. Pres.	Imperative.	Infinitive.	
1st CONJ.	**A**-verbs	Ămō	ămā	ămā-rĕ	*love*
2nd CONJ.	**E**-verbs	Mŏnĕō	mŏnē	mŏnē-rĕ	*advise*
3rd CONJ.	**Cons.**-verbs	Rĕgō	rĕg-*ĕ*	rĕg-*ĕ*rĕ	*rule*
	U-verbs	Indŭō	indŭ-ĕ	indŭ-*ĕ*rĕ	*put on*
4th CONJ.	**I**-verbs	Audĭō	audī	audī-rĕ	*hear.*

DEPONENT VERBS.

1st CONJ.	**A**-verbs	Vēnŏr	vēnā-rĕ	vēnā-rī	*hunt*
2nd CONJ.	**E**-verbs	Vĕrĕŏr	vĕrē-rĕ	vĕrē-rī	*fear*
3rd CONJ.	**Cons.**-verbs	Ūtŏr	ūt-*ĕ*rĕ	ūt-ī	*use*
4th CONJ.	**I**-verbs	Partĭŏr	partī-rĕ	partī-rī	*divide.*

§ 47. The PRESENT, PERFECT, and SUPINE-STEMS must be known in order to conjugate a Verb: as,

	ACTIVE VERBS.			DEPONENT VERBS.	
	Pres. Stem.	Perf. Stem.	Sup. Stem.	Pres. Stem.	Sup. Stem.
1.	Am**A**-	ămā**V**-	ămā**T**-	Vēn**A**-	vēnā**T**-
2.	Mŏn**E**-	mŏn**U**-	mŏnĭ**T**-	Vĕr**E**-	vĕrĭ**T**-
3.	Rĕ**G**-	rex- (reg**S**-)	rec**T**-	Ū**T**-	ū**S**-
4.	Aŭd**I**-	audī**V**-	audī**T**-	Part**I**-	partī**T**-

From these the other parts of the Verb may be formed.

DERIVATION OF THE VERB-FORMS.

From PRESENT Stem.	From PERFECT Stem.	From SUPINE Stem.
Present Act. and Pass.	Perfect Act.	Supines
Future Simple A. and P.	Future Perfect Act.	Participle Fut. Act.
Imperf. Act. and Pass.	Pluperfect Act.	Infinitive Fut. Pass.
Imperat. Act. and Pass.	Infinitive Perfect Act.	Participle Perf. Pass.
Infin. Pres. Act. and Pass.		Perfect Pass.
Gerund and Gerundive		Future Perf. Pass.
Participle Pres. Act.		Pluperfect Pass.
		Infinitive Perf. Pass.

a. A Verb, therefore, is sufficiently conjugated thus:

SHORT FORM FOR ACTIVE VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Ămō	Mŏnĕō	Rĕgō	Audĭō
Infin. Pres.	ămā-rĕ	mŏnē-rĕ	rĕg-ĕrĕ	audī-rĕ
Perfect	ămāv-ī	mŏnŭ-ī	rex-ī	audīv-ī
Supine in *um*	ămāt-um.	mŏnĭt-um.	rect-um.	audīt-um.

SHORT FORM FOR DEPONENT OR PASSIVE VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Ămŏr	Mŏnĕŏr	Rĕgŏr	Audĭŏr
Infin. Pres.	ămā-rī	mŏnē-rī	rĕg-ī	audī-rī
Partic. Perf.	ămāt-ŭs	mŏnĭt-ŭs	rect-ŭs	audīt-ŭs
Gerundive	ămandŭs.	mŏnendŭs.	rĕgendŭs.	audĭendŭs.

b. Or, as a useful exercise, the following parts may often be repeated:

LONGER FORM FOR ACTIVE VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Ămō	Mŏnĕō	Rĕgō	Audĭō
2 Pers. Pres.	ămās	mŏnēs	rĕgĭs	audīs
Infin. Pres.	ămārĕ	mŏnērĕ	rĕgĕrĕ	audīrĕ
Perfect	ămāvī	mŏnŭī	rexī	audīvī
Ger. in *dum*	ămandum	mŏnendum	rĕgendum*	audĭendum
,, *di*	ămandī	mŏnendī	rĕgendī	audĭendī
,, *do*	ămandō	mŏnendō	rĕgendō	audĭendō
Sup. in *um*	ămātum	mŏnĭtum	rectum	audītum
,, *u*	ămātū	mŏnĭtū	rectū	audītū
Part. Pres.	ămans	mŏnens	rĕgens	audĭens
,, Fut.	ămātūrŭs.	mŏnĭtūrŭs.	rectūrŭs.	audītūrŭs.

LONGER FORM FOR DEPONENT VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Vēnŏr	Vĕrĕŏr	Ūtŏr	Partĭŏr
2 Pers. Pres.	vēnārĭs	vĕrērĭs	ūtĕrĭs	partīrĭs
Infin. Pres.	vēnārī	vĕrērī	ūtī	partīrī
Perfect	vēnātŭs sum	vĕrĭtŭs sum	ūsŭs sum	partītŭs sum
Ger. in *dum*	vēnandum	vĕrendum	ūtendum	partĭendum
,, *di*	vēnandī	vĕrendī	ūtendī	partĭendī
,, *do*	vēnandō	vĕrendō	ūtendō	partĭendō
Gerundive	vēnandŭs	vĕrendŭs	ūtendŭs	partĭendŭs
Sup. in *um*	vēnātum	vĕrĭtum	ūsum	partītum
,, *u*	vēnātū	vĕrĭtū	ūsū	partītū
Part. Pres.	vēnans	vĕrens	ūtens	partĭens
,, Perf.	vēnātŭs	vĕrĭtŭs	ūsŭs	partītŭs
,, Fut.	vēnātūrŭs.	vĕrĭtūrŭs.	ūsūrŭs.	partītūrŭs.

* The forms *-undum -undŭs* are sometimes used in the 3rd and 4th Conjugations. Intransitive Verbs form no Gerundive, and no Supine in *u*.

§ 48. Action and State occur in Time. Time is either simply Present, Past, or Future; or it is Present, Past, or Future with some further relation. The subjoined Scheme shows (for the Active Voice and Indicative Mood) how each of these states is expressed in Latin and English; whence it appears that Latin has not Tense-forms enough to supply one for each state; but that three (ămō, ămāvī, ămābō) are used in two functions each.

	Time.	Indic.	English.	Name of Tense.
Present.	Simple	ămō	*I love*	Present.
	Pres. Relation	ămō	*am loving*	
	Past Relation	ămāvī . . .	*have loved*	
	Fut. Relation	ămātūrŭs sum	*am about to love*	Fŭtūrum Pĕrĭphrastĭcum Praesentĭs.
Past.	Simple	ămāvī . . .	*loved*	Perfect.
	Pres. Relation	ămābam . .	*was loving*	Imperfect.
	Past Relation	ămāvĕram .	*had loved*	Pluperfect.
	Fut. Relation	ămātūrŭs fŭī.	*was about to love*	Fŭtūrum Pĕrĭphrastĭcum Praetĕrĭtī.
Future.	Simple	ămābō . . .	*shall love*	Future Simple.
	Pres. Relation	ămābō . . .	*shall be loving*	
	Past Relation	ămāvĕrō . .	*shall have loved*	Future Perfect.
	Fut. Relation	ămātūrŭs ĕrō	*shall be about to love*	Fŭtūrum Pĕrĭphrastĭcum Fŭtūrī.

Note 1. The Present, the Futures, and the Present Past (ămāvī, *I have loved*) are called Primary Tenses: the Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Simple Perfect (ămāvī, *I loved*) Historic Tenses.

Note 2. *A.* The Perfect is formed in several ways:—1. By adding **vī** to the Stem: as, ămāvī, flēvī. 2. By adding **ŭī** (for vi) to the Stem or Clipt Stem:* as, cŏlŭī, mōnŭī. 3. By adding **sī** to the Stem or Clipt Stem: as, carpsī, mansī. In this formation Consonants are generally changed (see § 81). 4. By prefixing a Reduplication, and adding **ī** to the Stem or Clipt Stem. This Reduplication is either the first Consonant and Vowel of the Stem: as, **cŭ**currī, **mŏ**mordī; or the first Consonant with **ĕ**, in which case the Stem-vowel is usually changed: as, **cĕ**cĭnī (from cănō); see § 81; § 111 (9). 5. By adding **ī** to the Stem or Clipt Stem, with or without change of the Stem-vowel: as, bĭbī, vertī, ēgī (from ăgō), fāvī (from făvĕō).

B. The Supine is formed:—1. By adding to the Stem or Clipt Stem **tum**, sometimes **ĭ-tum**, and a change of letters often takes place: as, ămā**tum**, cu**ltum**, rec**tum**, mŏn-**ĭ-tum**. 2. The change of letters often requires **tum** to become **sum**. See Examples in § 81.

Note 3. The learner should bear in mind that the English given in the following Tables for the Tenses of Verbs is often only one of several possible meanings; especially in the Conjunctive Mood.

§ 49. Before the regular Verbs, it is necessary to conjugate the irregular but important Verb of Being, sum, essĕ, which lends its forms to complete the conjugation of other Verbs.

* A Clipt Stem is a Stem without its Vowel Character: as, mon- for monĕ-.

VERB FINITE.

	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Present Tense.	*S.* Sum, *I am* ĕs, *thou art* est, *he is* *Pl.* sŭmŭs, *we are* estĭs, *ye are* sunt, *they are.*	sim, *I may* sīs, *thou mayst* sĭt, *he may* sīmŭs, *we may* sītĭs, *ye may* sint, *they may* } *be.*	ĕs, *be thou* ēstĕ, *be ye.*
Future Simple.	*S.* ĕrō, *I shall* ĕrĭs, *thou wilt* ĕrĭt, *he will* *Pl.* ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall* ĕrĭtĭs, *ye will* ĕrunt, *they will* } *be*		estō, *thou must be* estō, *he must be* estōtĕ, *ye must be* suntō, *they must be.*
Imperfect.	*S.* ĕram, *I was* ĕrās, *thou wast* ĕrăt, *he was* *Pl.* ĕrāmŭs, *we were* ĕrātĭs, *ye were* ĕrant, *they were.*	essem *vel* fŏrem, *I might* essēs *v.* fŏrēs, *thou mightst* essĕt *v.* fŏrĕt, *he might* essēmŭs *v.* fŏrēmŭs, *we might* essētĭs *v.* fŏrētĭs, *ye might* essent *v.* fŏrent, *they might* } *be.*	

Perfect.	*S.* fŭī, *I have* fŭistī, *thou hast* fŭĭt, *he has* *Pl.* fŭĭmŭs, *we have* fŭistĭs, *ye have* fŭērunt *vel* fŭērĕ, *they have*	*been.**	fŭĕrim, *I may* fŭĕrĭs, *thou mayst* fŭĕrĭt, *he may* fŭĕrĭmŭs, *we may* fŭĕrĭtĭs, *ye may* fŭĕrint, *they may*	*have been.*
Future Perfect.	*S.* fŭĕrō, *I shall* fŭĕrĭs, *thou wilt* fŭĕrĭt, *he will* *Pl.* fŭĕrĭmus, *we shall* fŭĕrĭtĭs, *ye will* fŭĕrint, *they will*	*have been.*		
Pluperfect.	*S.* fŭĕram, *I had* fŭĕrās, *thou hadst* fŭĕrăt, *he had* *Pl.* fŭĕrāmŭs, *we had* fŭĕrātĭs, *ye had* fŭĕrant, *they had*	*been.*	fŭissem, *I should* fŭissēs, *thou wouldst* fŭissĕt, *he would* fŭissēmŭs, *we should* fŭissētĭs, *ye would* fŭissent, *they would*	*have been.*

VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive Present and Imperfect.
essĕ, *to be.*

Infinitive Perfect and Pluperfect.
fŭissĕ, *to have been.*

Infinitive Future.
fŏrĕ *v.* fŭtūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to be.*

Gerunds.
None.

Supines.
None.

Participle Present.
None.

Participle Future.
fŭtūrŭs, *about to be.*

Fŭtūrŭs may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: see § 64.

Like Sum decline its compounds absum, adsum, dēsum, insum, intersum, obsum, praesum, prōsum, subsum, sŭpersum. Prōsum takes *d* before *e*; as, Prōsum, prōdēs, prōdēst, prōsŭmŭs, prōdēstĭs, prōsunt. Absum has Pres. Part. absens; praesum, praesens. Possum will be noticed hereafter.

* Or, '*I was, thou wast,*' &c.

VERB FINITE.

	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Present Tense.	*S.* Ămō, *I love* ămās, *thou lovest* ămăt, *he loves* *Pl.* ămāmŭs, *we love* ămātĭs, *ye love* ămant, *they love.*	ămem, *I may* ămēs, *thou mayst* ămĕt, *he may* ămēmŭs, *we may* ămētĭs, *ye may* ăment, *they may* } *love.*	ămā, *love thou* ămātĕ, *love ye.*
Future Simple.	*S.* ămābō, *I shall* ămābĭs, *thou wilt* ămābĭt, *he will* *Pl.* ămābĭmŭs, *we shall* ămābĭtĭs, *ye will* ămābunt, *they will* } *love.*		ămātō, *thou* ămātō, *he* ămātōtĕ, *ye* ămantō, *they* } *must love.*
Imperfect.	*S.* ămābam, *I was* ămābās, *thou wast* ămābăt, *he was* *Pl.* ămābāmŭs, *we were* ămābātĭs, *ye were* ămābant, *they were* } *loving.*	ămārem, *I might* ămārēs, *thou mightst* ămārĕt, *he might* ămārēmŭs, *we might* ămārētĭs, *ye might* ămārent, *they might* } *love.*	

Perfect.	*S.* ămāvī, *I loved**	ămāvĕrim, *I may*	
	ămāvistī, *thou lovedst*	ămāvĕrĭs, *thou mayst*	
	ămāvĭt, *he loved*	ămāvĕrĭt, *he may*	*have*
	Pl. ămāvĭmŭs, *we loved*	ămāvĕrĭmŭs, *we may*	*loved.*
	ămāvistĭs, *ye loved*	ămāvĕrĭtĭs, *ye may*	
	ămāv-ērunt *v.* ămāv-ērĕ, *they loved.*	ămāvĕrint, *they may*	
Future Perfect.	*S.* ămāvĕrō, *I shall*		
	ămāvĕrĭs, *thou wilt*		
	ămāvĕrĭt, *he will*		
	Pl. ămāvĕrĭmŭs, *we shall*		
	ămāvĕrĭtĭs, *ye will*		
	ămāvĕrint, *they will*		*have loved.*
Pluperfect.	*S.* ămāvĕram, *I had*	ămāvissem, *I should*	
	ămāvĕrās, *thou hadst*	ămāvissēs, *thou wouldst*	
	ămāvĕrăt, *he had*	ămāvissĕt, *he would*	
	Pl. ămāvĕrāmŭs, *we had*	ămāvissēmŭs, *we should*	
	ămāvĕrātĭs, *ye had*	ămāvissētĭs, *ye would*	
	ămāvĕrant, *they had*	ămāvissent, *they would*	*have loved.*
loved.			

VERB INFINITE.

Inf. Pres. Imp. ămārĕ, *to love.*
Inf. Perf. Plup. ămāvissĕ, *to have loved.*
Inf. Fut. . . ămātūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to love.*

Ger. Nom. Ac. ămandum, *loving.*
Ger. Gen. . . ămandī, *of loving.*
Ger. Dat. Abl. ămandō, *for* or *by loving.*

Sup. in *um.* . ămātum, *to love.*
Sup. in *u.* . . ămātū, *in loving*, or *to be loved.*

Part. Pres. . . ămans, *loving.*
Part. Fut. . . ămātūrŭs, *about to love.*

* Or, '*I have loved, thou hast loved,*' &c.

VERB FINITE.

	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Present Tense.	*S.* Mŏnĕō, *I advise* mŏnēs, *thou advisest* mŏnĕt, *he advises* *Pl.* mŏnēmŭs, *we advise* mŏnētĭs, *ye advise* mŏnent, *they advise.*	mŏnĕam, *I may* mŏnĕās, *thou mayst* mŏnĕăt, *he may* mŏnĕāmŭs, *we may* mŏnĕātĭs, *ye may* mŏnĕant, *they may* } *advise.*	mŏnē, *advise thou* mŏnētĕ, *advise ye.*
Future Simple.	*S.* mŏnēbō, *I shall* mŏnēbĭs, *thou wilt* mŏnēbĭt, *he will* *Pl.* mŏnēbĭmŭs, *we shall* mŏnēbĭtĭs, *ye will* mŏnēbunt, *they will* } *advise.*		mŏnētō, *thou* mŏnētō, *he* mŏnētōtĕ, *ye* mŏnentō, *they* } *must advise.*
Imperfect.	*S.* mŏnēbam, *I was* mŏnēbās, *thou wast* mŏnēbăt, *he was* *Pl.* mŏnēbāmŭs, *we were* mŏnēbātĭs, *ye were* mŏnēbant, *they were* } *advising.*	mŏnērem, *I might* mŏnērēs, *thou mightst* mŏnērĕt, *he might* mŏnērēmŭs, *we might* mŏnērētĭs, *ye might* mŏnērent, *they might* } *advise.*	

Perfect.	*S.* mŏnŭī, *I advised**	mŏnŭĕrim, *I may*
	mŏnŭistī, *thou advisedst*	mŏnŭĕrĭs, *thou mayst*
	mŏnŭĭt, *he advised*	mŏnŭĕrĭt, *he may*
	Pl. mŏnŭĭmŭs, *we advised*	mŏnŭĕrĭmŭs, *we may*
	mŏnŭistĭs, *ye advised*	mŏnŭĕrĭtĭs, *ye may*
	mŏnŭ-ērunt *v.* mŏnŭ-ērĕ, *they advised.*	mŏnŭĕrint, *they may*
		} *have advised.*
Future Perfect.	*S.* mŏnŭĕrō, *I shall*	
	mŏnŭĕrĭs, *thou wilt*	
	mŏnŭĕrĭt, *he will*	
	Pl. mŏnŭĕrĭmŭs, *we shall*	
	mŏnŭĕrĭtĭs, *ye will*	
	mŏnŭĕrint, *they will*	} *have advised.*
Pluperfect.	*S.* mŏnŭĕram, *I had*	mŏnŭissem, *I should*
	mŏnŭĕrās, *thou hadst*	mŏnŭissēs, *thou wouldst*
	mŏnŭĕrăt, *he had*	mŏnŭissĕt, *he would*
	Pl. mŏnŭĕrāmŭs, *we had*	mŏnŭissēmŭs, *we should*
	mŏnŭĕrātĭs, *ye had*	mŏnŭissētĭs, *ye would*
	mŏnŭĕrant, *they had*	mŏnŭissent, *they would*
	} *advised.*	} *have advised.*

VERB INFINITE.

Inf. Pres. Imp. mŏnērĕ, *to advise.*
Inf. Perf. Plup. mŏnŭissĕ, *to have advised.*
Inf. Fut. . . mŏnĭtūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to advise.*
Ger. Nom. Ac. mŏnendum, *advising.*
Ger. Gen. . . mŏnendī, *of advising.*
Ger. Dat. Abl. mŏnendō, *for* or *by advising.*
Sup. in *um* . mŏnĭtum, *to advise.*
Sup. in *u* . . mŏnĭtū, *in advising* or *to be advised.*
Part. Pres. . . mŏnens, *advising.*
Part. Fut. . . mŏnĭtūrŭs, *about to advise.*

* Or, '*I have advised*,' &c.

VERB FINITE.

	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Present Tense.	*S.* Rĕgō, *I rule* rĕgĭs, *thou rulest* rĕgĭt, *he rules* *Pl.* rĕgĭmŭs, *we rule* rĕgĭtĭs, *ye rule* rĕgunt, *they rule.*	rĕgam, *I may* rĕgās, *thou mayst* rĕgăt, *he may* rĕgāmŭs, *we may* rĕgātĭs, *ye may* rĕgant, *they may* } *rule.*	rĕgĕ, *rule thou** rĕgĭtĕ, *rule ye.*
Future Simple.	*S.* rĕgam, *I shall* rĕgēs, *thou wilt* rĕgĕt, *he will* *Pl.* rĕgēmŭs, *we shall* rĕgētĭs, *ye will* rĕgent, *they will* } *rule.*		rĕgĭtō, *thou* rĕgĭtō, *he* rĕgĭtōtĕ, *ye* rĕguntō, *they* } *must rule.*
Imperfect.	*S.* rĕgēbam, *I was* rĕgēbās, *thou wast* rĕgēbăt, *he was* *Pl.* rĕgēbāmŭs, *we were* rĕgēbātĭs, *ye were* rĕgēbant, *they were* } *ruling.*	rĕgĕrem, *I might* rĕgĕrēs, *thou mightst* rĕgĕrĕt, *he might* rĕgĕrēmŭs, *we might* rĕgĕrētĭs, *ye might* rĕgĕrent, *they might* } *rule.*	

Perfect.	*S.* rēxī, *I ruled*† rēxistī, *thou ruledst* rēxĭt, *he ruled* *Pl.* rēxĭmŭs, *we ruled* rēxistĭs, *ye ruled* [*ruled.* rēx-ērunt *vĕl* rex-ērĕ, *they*	rēxĕrim, *I may* rēxĕrĭs, *thou mayst* rēxĕrĭt, *he may* rēxĕrĭmŭs, *we may* rēxĕrĭtĭs, *ye may* rēxĕrint, *they may* } *have ruled.*
Future Perfect.	*S.* rēxĕrō, *I shall* rēxĕrĭs, *thou wilt* rēxĕrĭt, *he will* } *have* *Pl.* rēxĕrĭmŭs, *we shall* } *ruled.* rēxĕrĭtĭs, *ye will* rēxĕrint, *they will*	
Pluperfect.	*S.* rēxĕram, *I had* rēxĕrās, *thou hadst* rēxĕrăt, *he had* *Pl.* rēxĕrāmŭs, *we had* } *ruled.* rēxĕrātĭs, *ye had* rēxĕrant, *they had*	rēxissem, *I should* rēxissēs, *thou wouldst* rēxissĕt, *he would* rēxissēmŭs, *we should* } *have ruled.* rēxissētĭs, *ye would* rēxissent, *they would*

VERB INFINITE.

Inf. Pres. Imp. rĕgĕrĕ, *to rule.*
Inf. Perf. Plup. rēxissĕ, *to have ruled.*
Inf. Fut. . . rectūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to rule.*
Ger. Nom. Ac. rĕgendum, *ruling.*
Ger. Gen. . . rĕgendī, *of ruling.*
Ger. Dat. Abl. rĕgendō, *for* or *by ruling.*
Sup. in *um* . rectum, *to rule.*
Sup in *u* . . rectū, *in ruling*, or *to be ruled.*
Part. Pres. . rĕgens, *ruling.*
Part. Fut. . rectūrŭs, *about to rule.*

* Făcĭō, dīcō, dūcō, make Imperative Present Second Person, făc, dīc, dūc.
† Or, '*I have ruled*,' &c.

VERB FINITE.

	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Present Tense.	*S.* Audīō, *I hear* audīs, *thou hearest* audĭt, *he hears* *Pl.* audīmŭs, *we hear* audītĭs, *ye hear* audĭunt, *they hear.*	audĭam, *I may* audĭās, *thou mayst* audĭăt, *he may* audĭāmŭs, *we may* audĭātĭs, *ye may* audĭant, *they may* } *hear.*	audī, *hear thou* audītĕ, *hear ye.*
Future Simple.	*S.* audĭam, *I shall* audĭēs, *thou wilt* audĭĕt, *he will* *Pl.* audĭēmŭs, *we shall* audĭētĭs, *ye will* audĭent, *they will* } *hear.*		audītō, *thou* audītō, *he* audītōtĕ, *ye* audĭuntō, *they* } *must hear.*
Imperfect.	*S.* audĭēbam, *I was* audĭēbās, *thou wast* audĭēbăt, *he was* *Pl.* audĭēbāmŭs, *we were* audĭēbātĭs, *ye were* audĭēbant, *they were* } *hearing.*	audīrem, *I might* audīrēs, *thou mightst* audīrĕt, *he might* audīrēmŭs, *we might* audīrētĭs, *ye might* audīrent, *they might* } *hear.*	

Perfect.	*S.* audīvī, *I heard** / audīvistī, *thou heardest* / audīvĭt, *he heard* *Pl.* audīvĭmŭs, *we heard* / audīvistĭs, *ye heard* / audīv-ērunt *v.* audīv-ērĕ, *they heard.*	audīvĕrim, *I may* / audīvĕrĭs, *thou mayst* / audīvĕrĭt, *he may* / audīvĕrĭmŭs, *we may* / audīvĕrĭtĭs, *ye may* / audīvĕrint, *they may* — *have heard.*
Future Perfect.	*S.* audīvĕrō, *I shall* / audīvĕrĭs, *thou wilt* / audīvĕrĭt, *he will* *Pl.* audīvĕrĭmŭs, *we shall* / audīvĕrĭtĭs, *ye will* / audīvĕrint, *they will* — *have heard.*	
Pluperfect.	*S.* audīvĕram, *I had* / audīvĕrās, *thou hadst* / audīvĕrăt, *he had* *Pl.* audīvĕrāmŭs, *we had* / audīvĕrātĭs, *ye had* / audīvĕrant, *they had* — *heard.*	audīvissem, *I should* / audīvissēs, *thou wouldst* / audīvissĕt, *he would* / audīvissēmŭs, *we should* / audīvissētĭs, *ye would* / audīvissent, *they would* — *have heard.*

* Or, '*I have heard*,' &c.

VERB INFINITE.

Inf. Pres. Imp. audīrĕ, *to hear.*
Inf. Perf. Plup. audīvissĕ, *to have heard.*
Inf. Fut. . . audītūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to hear.*
Ger. Nom. Ac. audĭendum, *hearing.*
Ger. Gen. . . audĭendī, *of hearing.*
Ger. Dat. Abl. audĭendō, *for* or *by hearing.*
Sup. in *um* . audītum, *to hear.*
Sup. in *u* . . audītū, *in hearing*, or *to be heard.*
Part. Pres. . . audĭens, *hearing.*
Part. Fut. . . audītūrŭs, *about to hear.*

VERB FINITE.

	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Present Tense.	*S.* Ămor, *I am* ămā-rĭs *vĕl* -rĕ, *thou art* ămātŭr, *he is* *Pl.* ămāmŭr, *we are* ămāmĭnī, *ye are* ămantŭr, *they are* } *loved.*	ămĕr, *I may* ămē-rĭs *vĕl* -rĕ, *thou mayst* ămētŭr, *he may* ămēmŭr, *we may* ămēmĭnī, *ye may* ămentŭr, *they may* } *be loved.*	ămārĕ, *be thou* ămāmĭnī, *be ye* } *loved.*
Future Simple.	*S.* ămābŏr, *I shall* ămābĕ-rĭs *vĕl* -rĕ, *thou wilt* ămābĭtŭr, *he will* *Pl.* ămābĭmŭr, *we shall* ămābĭmĭnī, *ye will* ămābuntŭr, *they will* } *be loved.*		ămātŏr, *thou* ămātŏr, *he* ămantŏr, *they* } *must be loved.*
Imperfect.	*S.* ămābăr, *I was* ămābā-rĭs *vĕl* -rĕ, *thou wast* ămābātŭr, *he was* *Pl.* ămābāmŭr, *we were* ămābāmĭnī, *ye were* ămābantŭr, *they were* } *being loved.*	ămārĕr, *I might* ămārē-rĭs *vĕl* -rĕ, *thou mightst* ămārētŭr, *he might* ămārēmŭr, *we might* ămārēmĭnī, *ye might* ămārentŭr, *they might* } *be loved.*	

Perfect.	*S.* ămātŭs sum, *I was* ămātŭs ĕs, *thou wast* ămātŭs est, *he was* *Pl.* ămātī sŭmŭs, *we were* ămātī estĭs, *ye were* ămātī sunt, *they were* } *loved.*	ămātŭs sim, *I may* ămātŭs sīs, *thou mayst* ămātŭs sĭt, *he may* ămātī sīmŭs, *we may* ămātī sītĭs, *ye may* ămātī sint, *they may* } *have been loved.*
Future Perfect.	*S.* ămātŭs ĕrō, *I shall* ămātŭs ĕrĭs, *thou wilt* ămātŭs ĕrĭt, *he will* *Pl.* ămātī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall* ămātī ĕrĭtĭs, *ye will* ămātī ĕrunt, *they will* } *have been loved.*	
Pluperfect.	*S.* ămātŭs ĕram, *I had* ămātŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst* ămātŭs ĕrăt, *he had* *Pl.* ămātī ĕrāmŭs, *we had* ămātī ĕrātĭs, *ye had* ămātī ĕrant, *they had* } *been loved.*	ămātŭs essem, *I should* ămātŭs essēs, *thou wouldst* ămātŭs essĕt, *he would* ămātī essēmŭs, *we should* ămātī essētĭs, *ye would* ămātī essent, *they would* } *have been loved.*

VERB INFINITE.

Inf. Pres. Imp. ămārī, *to be loved.**

Inf. Perf. Plup. ămātŭs essĕ, *to have been loved.*

Inf. Fut. . . ămātum īrī.

Part. Perf. . . ămātŭs, *loved.*

Gerundive . . ămandŭs, *meet to be loved.*

* The ancient ending of Infinitive Present Passive was *ĭĕr*: as, ămārĭĕr; and this form is sometimes used by poets.

VERB FINITE.

	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Present Tense.	*S.* Mŏnĕŏr, *I am* / mŏnē-rĭs *v.* -rĕ, *thou art* / mŏnētŭr, *he is* / *Pl.* mŏnēmŭr, *we are* / mŏnēmĭnī, *ye are* / mŏnentŭr, *they are* — *advised.*	mŏnĕăr, *I may* / mŏnēā-rĭs *v.* -rĕ, *thou mayst* / mŏnēātŭr, *he may* / mŏnēāmŭr, *we may* / mŏnēāmĭnī, *ye may* / mŏnĕantŭr, *they may* — *be advised.*	mŏnērĕ, *be thou* / mŏnēmĭnī, *be ye* — *advised.*
Future Simple.	*S.* mŏnēbŏr, *I shall* / mŏnēbĕ-rĭs *v.* -rĕ, *thou wilt* / mŏnēbĭtŭr, *he will* / *Pl.* mŏnēbĭmŭr, *we shall* / mŏnēbĭmĭnī, *ye will* / mŏnēbuntŭr, *they will* — *be advised.*		mŏnētŏr, *thou* / mŏnētŏr, *he* / mŏnentŏr, *they* — *must be advised.*
Imperfect.	*S.* mŏnēbăr, *I was* / mŏnēbā-rĭs *v.* -rĕ, *thou wast* / mŏnēbātŭr, *he was* / *Pl.* mŏnēbāmŭr, *we were* / mŏnēbāmĭnī, *ye were* / mŏnēbantŭr, *they were* — *being advised.*	mŏnērĕr, *I might* / mŏnērē-rĭs *v.* -rĕ, *thou mightst* / mŏnērētŭr, *he might* / mŏnērēmŭr, *we might* / mŏnērēmĭnī, *ye might* / mŏnērentŭr, *they might* — *be advised.*	

Perfect.	*S.* mŏnĭtŭs sum, *I was* mŏnĭtŭs ĕs, *thou wast* mŏnĭtŭs est, *he was* *Pl.* mŏnĭtī sŭmŭs, *we were* mŏnĭtī estĭs, *ye were* mŏnĭtī sunt, *they were* } *advised.*	mŏnĭtŭs sim, *I may* mŏnĭtŭs sīs, *thou mayst* mŏnĭtŭs sĭt, *he may* mŏnĭtī sīmŭs, *we may* mŏnĭtī sītĭs, *ye may* mŏnĭtī sint, *they may* } *have been advised.*
Future Perfect.	*S.* mŏnĭtŭs ĕrō, *I shall* mŏnĭtŭs ĕrĭs, *thou wilt* mŏnĭtŭs ĕrĭt, *he will* *Pl.* mŏnĭtī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall* mŏnĭtī ĕrĭtĭs, *ye will* mŏnĭtī ĕrunt, *they will* } *have been advised.*	
Pluperfect.	*S.* mŏnĭtŭs ĕram, *I had* mŏnĭtŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst* mŏnĭtŭs ĕrăt, *he had* *Pl.* mŏnĭtī ĕrāmŭs, *we had* mŏnĭtī ĕrātĭs, *ye had* mŏnĭtī ĕrant, *they had* } *been advised.*	mŏnĭtŭs essem, *I should* mŏnĭtŭs essēs, *thou wouldst* mŏnĭtŭs essĕt, *he would* mŏnĭtī essēmŭs, *we should* mŏnĭtī essētĭs, *ye would* mŏnĭtī essent, *they would* } *have been advised.*

VERB INFINITE.

Inf. Pres. Imp. mŏnērī, *to be advised.*

Inf. Perf. Plup. mŏnĭtŭs essĕ, *to have been advised.*

Inf. Fut. . . mŏnĭtum īrī.

Part. Perf. . mŏnĭtŭs, *advised.*

Gerundive . mŏnendŭs, *meet to be advised.*

VERB FINITE.

	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Present Tense.	*S.* Rĕgŏr, *I am* rĕgĕ-rĭs *vĕl* -rĕ, *thou art* rĕgĭtŭr, *he is* *Pl.* rĕgĭmŭr, *we are* rĕgĭmĭnī, *ye are* rĕguntŭr, *they are* } *ruled.*	rĕgăr, *I may* rĕgā-rĭs *v.* -rĕ, *thou mayst* rĕgātŭr, *he may* rĕgāmŭr, *we may* rĕgāmĭnī, *ye may* rĕgantŭr, *they may* } *be ruled.*	rĕgĕrĕ, *be thou* rĕgĭmĭnī, *be ye* } *ruled.*
Future Simple.	*S.* rĕgăr, *I shall* rĕgē-rĭs *v.* -rĕ, *thou wilt* rĕgētŭr, *he will* *Pl.* rĕgēmŭr, *we shall* rĕgēmĭnī, *ye will* rĕgentŭr, *they will* } *be ruled.*		rĕgĭtŏr, *thou* rĕgĭtŏr, *he* rĕguntŏr, *they* } *must be ruled.*
Imperfect.	*S.* rĕgēbăr, *I was* rĕgēbā-rĭs *vĕl* -rĕ, *thou wast* rĕgēbātŭr, *he was* *Pl.* rĕgēbāmŭr, *we were* rĕgēbāmĭnī, *ye were* rĕgēbantŭr, *they were* } *being ruled.*	rĕgĕrĕr, *I might* rĕgĕrē-rĭs *v.* -rĕ, *thou mightst* rĕgĕrētŭr, *he might* rĕgĕrēmŭr, *we might* rĕgĕrēmĭnī, *ye might* rĕgĕrentŭr, *they might* } *be ruled.*	

Perfect.	*S.* rectŭs sum, *I was* rectŭs ĕs, *thou wast* rectŭs est, *he was* *Pl.* rectī sŭmŭs, *we were* rectī estĭs, *ye were* rectī sunt, *they were*	*ruled.*	rectŭs sim, *I may* rectŭs sīs, *thou mayst* rectŭs sĭt, *he may* rectī sīmŭs, *we may* rectī sītĭs, *ye may* rectī sint, *they may* *have been ruled.*
Future Perfect.	*S.* rectŭs ĕrō, *I shall* rectŭs ĕrĭs, *thou wilt* rectŭs ĕrĭt, *he will* *Pl.* rectī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall* rectī ĕrĭtĭs, *ye will* rectī ĕrunt, *they will*	*have been ruled.*	
Pluperfect.	*S.* rectŭs ĕram, *I had* rectŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst* rectŭs ĕrăt, *he had* *Pl.* rectī ĕrāmŭs, *we had* rectī ĕrātĭs, *ye had* rectī ĕrant, *they had*	*been ruled.*	rectŭs essem, *I should* rectŭs essēs, *thou wouldst* rectŭs essĕt, *he would* rectī essēmŭs, *we should* rectī essētĭs, *ye would* rectī essent, *they would* *have been ruled.*

VERB INFINITE.

Inf. Pres. Imp. rĕgī, *to be ruled.*
Inf. Perf. Plup. rectŭs essĕ, *to have been ruled.*
Inf. Fut. . . rectum īrī.
Part. Perf. . rectŭs, *ruled.*
Gerundive . . rĕgendŭs, *meet to be ruled.*

VERB FINITE.

	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Present Tense.	*S.* Audĭŏr, *I am* audī-rĭs *vel* -rĕ, *thou art* audītŭr, *he is* *Pl.* audīmŭr, *we are* audīmĭnī, *ye are* audĭuntŭr, *they are* } *heard.*	audĭăr, *I may* audiā-rĭs *v.* -rĕ, *thou mayst* audiātŭr, *he may* audiāmŭr, *we may* audiāmĭnī, *ye may* audiantŭr, *they may* } *be heard.*	audīrĕ, *be thou* audīmĭnī, *be ye* } *heard.*
Future Simple.	*S.* audĭăr, *I shall* audiē-rĭs *v.*-rĕ, *thou wilt* audiētŭr, *he will* *Pl.* audiēmŭr, *we shall* audiēmĭnī, *ye will* audientŭr, *they will* } *be heard.*		audītŏr, *thou* audītŏr, *he* audĭuntŏr, *they* } *must be heard.*
Imperfect.	*S.* audiēbăr, *I was* audiēbā-rĭs *v.* -rĕ, *thou wast* audiēbātŭr, *he was* *Pl.* audiēbāmŭr, *we were* audiēbāmĭnī, *ye were* audiēbantŭr, *they were* } *being heard.*	audīrĕr, *I might* audirē-rĭs *v.*-rĕ, *thou mightst* audirētŭr, *he might* audirēmŭr, *we might* audirēmĭnī, *ye might* audirĕntŭr, *they might* } *be heard.*	

Perfect.	*S.* audītŭs sum, *I was* / audītŭs ĕs, *thou wast* / audītŭs est, *he was* / *Pl.* audītī sŭmŭs, *we were* / audītī estĭs, *ye were* / audītī sunt, *they were* — *heard.*	audītŭs sim, *I may* / audītŭs sīs, *thou mayst* / audītŭs sĭt, *he may* / audītī sīmŭs, *we may* / audītī sītĭs, *ye may* / audītī sint, *they may* — *have been heard.*	VERB INFINITE.
Future Perfect.	*S.* audītŭs ĕrō, *I shall* / audītŭs ĕrĭs, *thou wilt* / audītŭs ĕrĭt, *he will* / *Pl.* audītī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall* / audītī ĕrĭtĭs, *ye will* / audītī ĕrunt, *they will* — *have been heard.*		Inf. Pres. Imp. audīrī, *to be heard.*
Pluperfect.	*S.* audītŭs ĕram, *I had* / audītŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst* / audītŭs ĕrăt, *he had* / *Pl.* audītī ĕrāmŭs, *we had* / audītī ĕrātĭs, *ye had* / audītī ĕrant, *they had* — *been heard.*	audītŭs essem, *I should* / audītŭs essēs, *thou wouldst* / audītŭs essĕt, *he would* / audītī essēmŭs, *we should* / audītī essētĭs, *ye would* / audītī essent, *they would* — *have been heard.*	Inf. Perf. Plup. audītŭs essĕ, *to have been heard.* Inf. Fut. . audītum īrī. Part. Perf. . audītŭs, *heard.* Gerundive . audiendŭs, *meet to be heard.*

§ 59. SCHEME OF THE ACTIVE

INDICATIVE MOOD.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Present.	Ăm-	ō	ās	ăt	āmŭs	ātĭs	ant
	Mŏn-	ĕō	ēs	ĕt	ēmŭs	ētĭs	ent
	Rĕg-	ō	ĭs	ĭt	ĭmŭs	ĭtis	*u*nt
	Aud-	ĭō	īs	ĭt	īmŭs	ītĭs	ĭ*u*nt
Fut. Simple.	Ămā- Mŏnē-	bō	bĭs	bĭt	bĭmŭs	bĭtĭs	bunt
	Rĕg- Audĭ-	am	ēs	ĕt	ēmŭs	ētĭs	ent
Imperfect.	Ămā- Mŏnē- Rĕg-ē- Audĭ-ē-	bam	bās	băt	bāmŭs	bātĭs	bant
Perfect.	Ămāv- Mŏnŭ- Rex- Audīv-	ī	istī	ĭt	ĭmŭs	istĭs	ērunt *v.* ērĕ
Fut. Perf.	Ămāv- Mŏnŭ- Rex- Audīv-	ĕrō	ĕrĭs	ĕrĭt	ĕrĭmŭs	ĕrĭtĭs	ĕrint
Pluperfect.	Ămāv- Mŏnŭ- Rex- Audīv-	ĕram	ĕrās	ĕrăt	ĕrāmŭs	ĕrātĭs	ĕrant

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	Present.		Future.			
	S. 2.	Pl. 2.	S. 2.	S. 3.	Pl. 2.	Pl. 3.
Ăm-	Ā	ātĕ	ātō	ātō	ātōtĕ	antō
Mŏn-	Ē	ētĕ	ētō	ētō	ētōtĕ	entō
Rĕg-	ĕ	ĭtĕ	ĭtō	ĭtō	ĭtōtĕ	*u*ntō
Aud-	ī	ītĕ	ītō	ītō	ītōtĕ	ĭ*u*ntō

Note.—When the Perfect-stem ends in *av*, *ev*, *ov*, *v* is often eliminated before *is* or *er* (but not before *ērĕ*), and contraction always follows: as—

ămāvisti × ămastī implēvissem × implessem nōvistī × nostī
ămāvĕrunt × ămārunt implēvĕram × implēram nōvĕram × nōram

When the Perfect-stem ends in *iv*, *v* is often eliminated, and contraction may follow before *is* only: as, audīvī × audīī; audīvistī × audīistī × audistī.

Writers sometimes cast out *is* from other Perfect forms: as, dixtī for dixistī, accestĭs for accessistĭs, surrexĕ for surrexissĕ; ērepsēmŭs for ērepsissēmŭs.

The sign × means 'changed to.'

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.
VOICE.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Ăm-	em	ēs	ĕt	ēmŭs	ētĭs	ent
Mŏn-	ĕam	ĕās	ĕăt	ĕāmŭs	ĕātĭs	ĕant
Rĕg-	am	ās	ăt	āmŭs	ātĭs	ant
Aud-	ĭam	ĭās	ĭăt	ĭāmŭs	ĭātĭs	ĭant
Ămā-, Mŏnē-, Rĕgĕ-, Audī-	rem	rēs	rĕt	rēmŭs	rētĭs	rent
Ămāv-, Mŏnŭ-, Rex-, Audīv-	ĕrim	ĕrĭs	ĕrĭt	ĕrīmŭs	ĕrĭtĭs	ĕrint
Ămāv-, Mŏnŭ-, Rex-, Audīv-	issem	issēs	issĕt	issēmŭs	issētĭs	issent

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Imperf.		Perf. Pluperf.	
Ămā-, Mŏnē-, Rĕgĕ-, Audī-	rĕ	Ămāv-, Mŏnŭ-, Rex-, Audīv-	issĕ

GERUND.

	N. Ac.	G.	D. Abl.
Ăm-and-, Mŏn-end-, Rĕg-end-, Audī-end-	um,	ī,	ō

PARTICIPLE Pres. Impf.		SUPINES.			PARTICIPLE Future.
Ăm-	ans	Ămāt-, Mŏnĭt-, Rect-, Audīt-	1.	2.	ūrŭs.
Mŏn-, Rĕg-, Audĭ-	ens		um,	ū	

§ 60. SCHEME OF THE PASSIVE

INDICATIVE MOOD.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Present.	Ăm-	ŏr	ārĭs*	ātŭr	āmŭr	āmĭnī	antŭr
	Mŏn-	ĕŏr	ērĭs	ētŭr	ēmŭr	ēmĭnī	entŭr
	Rĕg-	ŏr	ĕrĭs	ĭtŭr	ĭmŭr	ĭmĭnī	*u*ntŭr
	Aud-	ĭŏr	īrĭs	ītŭr	īmŭr	īmĭnī	ĭ*u*ntŭr
Fut. Simple.	Ămā- Mŏnē-	bŏr	bĕrĭs *v.* bĕrĕ	bĭtŭr	bĭmŭr	bĭmĭnī	buntŭr
	Rĕg- Audī-	ăr	ērĭs *v.* ērĕ	ētŭr	ēmŭr	ēmĭnī	entŭr
Imperfect.	Ămā- Mŏnē- Rĕgē- Audī-ē-	băr	bārĭs *v.* bārĕ	bātŭr	bāmŭr	bāmĭnī	bantŭr
Perfect.	Ămāt- Mŏnĭt- Rect- Audīt-	ŭs sum†	ŭs ĕs	ŭs est	ī sŭmŭs	ī estĭs	ī sunt
Fut. Perf.	Ămāt- Mŏnĭt- Rect- Audīt-	ŭs ĕrō	ŭs ĕrĭs	ŭs ĕrĭt	ī ĕrĭmŭs	ī ĕrĭtĭs	ī ĕrunt
Pluperfect.	Ămāt- Mŏnĭt- Rect- Audīt-	ŭs ĕram	ŭs ĕrās	ŭs ĕrăt	ī ĕrāmŭs	ī ĕrātĭs	ī ĕrant

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	Present.		Future.		
	S. 2.	Pl. 2.	S. 2.	S. 3.	Pl. 3.
Ămā- Mŏnē-	rĕ	mĭnī	tŏr	tŏr	ntŏr
			tŏr	tŏr	ntŏr
Rĕg-	ĕrĕ	ĭmĭnī	ĭtŏr	ĭtŏr	*u*ntŏr
Audī-	rĕ	mĭnī	tŏr	tŏr	*u*ntŏr

* In the Second Pers. Pres. Indic. Passive it is not so usual to write rĕ for rĭs, on account of the confusion with Infin. Act. and Imperat. Pass.

† In the periphrases fŭī is occasionally used for sum, fŭĕrō for ĕrō, fŭĕram for ĕram, fŭĕrim for sim, fŭissem for essem, and fŭissĕ for essĕ: as, ămātŭs fŭī, fŭĕrō, fŭĕram, fŭĕrim, fŭissem, fŭissĕ, etc.

OUR CONJUGATIONS.

VOICE.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Ăm- / Mŏnĕ- / Rĕg- / Audī-	ĕr	ērĭs *v.* ērĕ	ētŭr	ēmŭr	ēmĭnī	entŭr
	ăr	ārĭs *v.* ārĕ	ātŭr	āmŭr	āmĭnī	antŭr
Amā- / Mŏnē- / Rĕgĕ- / Audī-	rĕr	rērĭs *v.* rērĕ	rētŭr	rēmŭr	rēmĭnī	rentŭr
Amāt- / Mŏnĭt- / Rect- / Audīt-	ŭs sim	ŭs sīs	ŭs sĭt	ī sīmŭs	ī sītĭs	ī sint
Amāt- / Mŏnĭt- / Rect- / Audīt-	ŭs essem	ŭs essēs	ŭs essĕt	ī essēmŭs	ī essētĭs	ī essent

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Imperf.	Perf. Pluperf.	Future.
Ămā- / Mŏnē- / Rĕg- / Audī- — rī / ī / rī	Amāt- / Mŏnĭt- / Rect- / Audīt- — ŭs essĕ	Amāt- / Mŏnĭt- / Rect- / Audīt- — um īrī

PARTICIPLE Perfect.	GERUNDIVE.
Ămāt- / Mŏnĭt- / Rect- / Audīt- — ŭs	Ămand- / Mŏnend- / Rĕgend- / Audĭend- — ŭs.

§ 61. CONJUGATION OF THE DEPONENT VERB UTOR, *I use* (THIRD).

VERB FINITE.

	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Present Tense.	*S.* Ūtŏr, *I use* ūtĕ-rĭs *vĕl* -rĕ, *thou usest* ūtĭtŭr, *he uses* *Pl.* ūtĭmŭr, *we use* ūtĭmĭnī, *ye use* ūtuntŭr, *they use.*	ūtăr, *I may* ūtā-rĭs *vĕl* -rĕ, *thou mayst* ūtātŭr, *he may* ūtāmŭr, *we may* ūtāmĭnī, *ye may* ūtantŭr, *they may* } *use.*	ūtĕrĕ, *use thou* ūtĭmĭnī, *use ye*
Future Simple.	*S.* ūtăr, *I shall* ūtē-rĭs *v.* -rĕ, *thou wilt* ūtētŭr, *he will* *Pl.* ūtēmŭr, *we shall* ūtēmĭnī, *ye will* ūtentŭr, *they will* } *use.*		ūtĭtŏr, *thou* ūtĭtŏr, *he* ūtuntŏr, *they* } *must use.*
Imperfect.	*S.* ūtēbăr, *I was* ūtēbā-rĭs *v.* -rĕ, *thou wast* ūtēbātŭr, *he was* *Pl.* ūtēbāmŭr, *we were* ūtēbāmĭnī, *ye were* ūtēbantŭr, *they were* } *using.*	ūtĕrĕr, *I might* ūtĕrē-rĭs *v.* -rĕ, *thou mightst* ūtĕrētŭr, *he might* ūtĕrēmŭr, *we might* ūtĕrēmĭnī, *ye might* ūtĕrentŭr, *they might* } *use.*	

Perfect.	*S.* ūsŭs sum, *I used* ūsŭs ĕs, *thou usedst* ūsŭs est, *he used* *Pl.* ūsī sŭmŭs, *we used* ūsī estĭs, *ye used* ūsī sunt, *they used.*	ūsŭs sim, *I may* ūsŭs sīs, *thou mayst* ūsŭs sĭt, *he may* ūsī sīmŭs, *we may* ūsī sītĭs, *ye may* ūsī sint, *they may*	*have used.*
Future Perfect.	*S.* ūsŭs ĕrō, *I shall* ūsŭs ĕrĭs, *thou wilt* ūsŭs ĕrĭt, *he will* *Pl.* ūsī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall* ūsī ĕrĭtĭs, *ye will* ūsī ĕrunt, *they will*		*have used.*
Pluperfect.	*S.* ūsŭs ĕram, *I had* ūsŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst* ūsŭs ĕrăt, *he had* *Pl.* ūsī ĕrāmŭs, *we had* ūsī ĕrātĭs, *ye had* ūsī ĕrant, *they had*	ūsŭs essem, *I should* ūsŭs essēs, *thou wouldst* ūsŭs essĕt, *he would* ūsī essēmŭs, *we should* ūsī essētĭs, *ye would* ūsī essent, *they would*	*have used.*

used.

VERB INFINITE.

Inf. Pres. Imp.	ūtī, *to use.*
Inf. Perf. Plup.	ūsŭs essĕ, *to have used.*
Inf. Fut. . .	ūsūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to use.*
Ger. Nom. Ac.	ūtendum, *using.*
Ger. Gen. . .	ūtendī, *of using.*
Ger. Dat. Abl.	ūtendō, *for* or *by using.*
Sup. in *um* .	ūsum, *to use.*
Sup. in *u* . .	ūsū, *in using*, or *to be used.*
Part. Pres. .	ūtens, *using.*
Part. Fut. . .	ūsūrŭs, *about to use.*
Part. Perf. .	ūsŭs, *having used.*
Gerundive . .	ūtendŭs, *to be used.*

§ 62. SCHEME OF THE DEPONENT

INDICATIVE MOOD.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Present.	Vēn-	ŏr	ā-rĭs (rĕ)	ātŭr	āmŭr	āmĭnī	antŭr
	Vĕr-	ĕŏr	ē-rĭs (rĕ)	ētŭr	ēmŭr	ēmĭnī	entŭr
	Ūt-	ŏr	*ĕ*-rĭs (rĕ)	ītŭr	ĭmŭr	ĭmĭnī	*u*ntŭr
	Part-	ĭŏr	ī-rĭs (rĕ)	ītŭr	īmŭr	īmĭnī	ĭ*u*ntŭr
Fut. Simple.	Vēnā-, Vĕrē-	bŏr	bĕ-rĭs (rĕ)	bĭtŭr	bĭmŭr	bĭmĭnī	buntŭr
	Ūt-, Partĭ-	ăr	ē-rĭs (rĕ)	ētŭr	ēmŭr	ēmĭnī	entŭr
Imperfect.	Vēnā-, Vĕrē-, Ūt-ē-, Partĭ-ē-	băr	barĭs *v.* bārĕ	bātŭr	bāmŭr	bāmĭnī	bantŭr
Perfect.	Vēnāt-, Vĕrĭt-, Ūs-, Partīt-	ŭs, sum	ŭs, ĕs	ŭs, est	ī, sŭmŭs	ī, estĭs	ī, sunt
Fut. Perf.	Vēnāt-, Vĕrĭt-, Ūs-, Partīt-	ŭs, ĕrō	ŭs, ĕrĭs	ŭs, ĕrĭt	ī, ĕrĭmŭs	ī, ĕrĭtĭs	ī, ĕrunt
Pluperfect.	Vēnāt-, Vĕrĭt-, Ūs-, Partīt-	ŭs, ĕram	ŭs, ĕrās	ŭs, ĕrăt	ī, ĕrāmŭs	ĕrātĭs	ĕrant

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	Present.		Future.		
	S. 2.	Pl. 2.	S. 2.	S. 3.	Pl. 3.
Vēnā-, Vĕrē-	rĕ	mĭnī	tŏr	tŏr	ntŏr
Ūt-	*ĕ*rĕ	*ĕ*-mĭnī	*ĭ*tŏr	*ĭ*tŏr	*u*ntŏr
Partī-	rĕ	mĭnī	tŏr	tŏr	*u*ntŏr

Note. Some Deponents have an Active form also; as, pūnĭŏr and pūnĭŏ, *punish*. Many Participles Perfect of Deponent Verbs are used Passively as well as Actively; such are, auspĭcātŭs, ăbōmĭnātŭs, ădeptŭs, cōmĭtātŭs, commentŭs, confessŭs, dētestātŭs, dignātŭs, exsĕcrātŭs, expertŭs, ēmensŭs, fūrātŭs, făbrĭcātŭs, frustrātŭs, ĭmĭtātŭs, mĕdĭtātŭs, mentītŭs, mĕdĭcātŭs, mĕrĭtŭs, mŏdĕrātŭs, oblītŭs, ŏpĭnātŭs, pactŭs, partītŭs, pollĭcĭtŭs, pŏpŭlātŭs, praedātŭs, prĕcātŭs, prŏfessŭs, sōlĭtŭs, testātŭs, testĭfĭcātŭs, vĕnĕrātŭs, etc.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

VERBS.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Vēn-	ĕr	ē-rĭs (rĕ)	ētŭr	ēmŭr	ēmĭnī	entŭr
Vĕr-	ĕăr	ĕā-rĭs (rĕ)	ĕātŭr	ĕāmŭr	ĕāmĭnī	ĕantŭr
Ūt-	ăr	ā-rĭs (rĕ)	ātŭr	āmŭr	āmĭnī	antŭr
Part-	ĭăr	ĭā-rĭs (rĕ)	ĭātŭr	ĭāmŭr	ĭāmĭnī	ĭantŭr
Vēnā- Vĕrē- Ūt-*ĕ*- Partī-	rĕr	rērĭs *v.* rērĕ	rētŭr	rēmŭr	rēmĭnī	rentŭr
Vēnāt- Vĕrĭt- Ūs- Partīt-	ŭs sim	ŭs sīs	ŭs sĭt	ī sīmŭs	ī sītĭs	ī sint
Vēnāt- Vĕrĭt- Ūs- Partīt-	ŭs essem	ŭs essēs	ŭs essĕt	ī essēmŭs	ī essētĭs	ī essent

VERB INFINITE.

INFIN. Pres. Imperf.	INFIN. Perf. Plup.	PART. Fut.	INFIN. Fut.
Vēnā- Vĕrē- Ūt- Partī- rī ī rī	Vēnāt- Vĕrĭt- Ūs- Partīt- ŭs essĕ	ūrŭs	ūrŭs essĕ

PART. Pres.	GERUND.	GERUNDIVE.	PART. Perf.	SUPINES.
Vēnans Vĕrens Ūtens Partĭens	Vēnand- Vĕrend- Ūtend- Partĭend- um, ī, ō	ŭs	Vēnāt- Vĕrĭt- Ūs- Partīt- ŭs	um, ū.

§ 63. *A.* Verbs in *ĭ-ō* of the Third Conjugation, in their Present-stem forms, retain this inorganic *ĭ* generally; but not before *i*, final *e*, and short *ĕr*. These Verbs are:—

Căpĭō, cŭpĭō, and făcĭō,
Fŏdĭō, fŭgĭō, and jăcĭō,
Părĭō, răpĭō, săpĭō, quătĭō,
Compounds of spĕcĭō and lăcĭō.
Deponent: grădĭŏr, pătĭŏr, mŏrĭŏr;
And, in some tenses, pŏtĭŏr, ŏrĭŏr.

EXAMPLES.

ACTIVE.

Indic.	Pres.	căpĭ-ō, căp-ĭs, -ĭt, -ĭmŭs, -ĭtĭs, căpĭ-unt.
	Fut.	căpĭ-am, -ēs, -ĕt, -ēmŭs, -ētĭs, -ent.
	Imperf.	căpĭ-ēbam, -ēbăs, -ēbăt, -ēbāmŭs, -ēbātĭs, -ēbant.
Conj.	Pres.	căpĭ-am, -ās, -ăt, -āmus, -ātĭs, -ant.
	Imperf.	căp-ĕrem, -ĕrēs, -ĕrĕt, -ĕrēmŭs, -ĕrētĭs, -ĕrent.
Imper.	Pres.	căp-ĕ, -ĭtĕ.
	Fut.	căp-ĭtō, -ĭtōtĕ, căpĭ-untō.
Infin.	Pres.	căp-ĕrĕ. Gerund, căpĭ-endum, -endī, -endō.

DEPONENT.

Indic.	Pres.	pătĭ-ŏr, păt-ĕrĭs, -ĭtŭr, -ĭmŭr, -ĭmĭnī, pătĭ-untŭr.
	Fut.	pătĭ-ăr, -ērĭs, -ētŭr, -ēmŭr, -ēmĭnī, -entŭr.
	Imperf.	pătĭ-ēbăr, -ēbārĭs, -ēbātŭr, -ēbāmŭr, -ēbāmĭnī, -ēbantŭr.
Conj.	Pres.	pătĭ-ăr, -ārĭs, -ātŭr, -āmŭr, -āmĭnī, -antŭr.
	Imperf.	păt-ĕrĕr, -ĕrērĭs, -ĕrētŭr, -ĕrēmŭr, -ĕrēmĭnī, -ĕrentŭr.
Imper.	Pres.	păt-ĕrĕ, -ĭmĭnī.
	Fut.	păt-ĭtŏr, pătĭ-untŏr.
Infin.	Pres.	păt-ī. Gerund, pătĭ-endŭm, -endī, -endō. Gerundive, pătĭ-endŭs.

Note 1. ŏrĭŏr is conjugated like pătĭŏr, except a few forms which follow the Fourth Conjugation: ŏrīrī, ŏrīrĕr, etc. pŏtĭŏr follows the Fourth Conjugation, but in some forms wavers between the Third and Fourth: as, pŏtĭtŭr or pŏtītŭr; pŏtĭmŭr or pŏtīmŭr; pŏtĕrĕr or pŏtīrĕr.

Note 2. mŏrĭŏr, ŏrĭŏr, have Future Participles mŏrĭtūrŭs, ŏrĭtūrŭs.

B. Verbs in *ŭō* retain *u* in all forms; as, indŭō, indŭĭs, indŭī, indŭĕrĕ.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

§ 64. The Participles in ūrŭs, dŭs, may be conjugated with all the Tenses of the Verb sum. These forms are called Conjŭgātĭō Pĕrĭphrastĭcă Fŭtūrī and Cŏnjūgātĭō Pĕrĭphrastĭcă Gĕrundīvī: as,

	Singular.						Plural.					
	C. P. F.			C. P. G.			C. P. F.			C. P. G.		
	Ămātūrŭs, ă, um			Ămandŭs, ă, um			Amātūrī, ae, ă			Amandī, ae, ă		
	Mŏnĭtūrŭs			Mŏnendŭs			Mŏnĭtūrī			Mŏnendī		
	Rectūrŭs			Rĕgendŭs			Rectūrī			Rĕgendī		
	Audītūrŭs			Audĭendŭs			Audītūrī			Audĭendī		
	Vēnātūrŭs			Vēnandŭs			Vēnātūrī			Vēnandī		
	Vĕrĭtūrŭs			Vĕrendŭs			Vĕrĭtūrī			Vĕrendī		
	Ūsūrŭs			Ūtendŭs			Ūsūrī			Ūtendī		
	Partītūrŭs			Partĭendŭs			Partītūrī			Partĭendī		
Pres.	sum	ĕs	est	sim	sīs	sĭt	sŭmŭs	estĭs	sunt	sīmŭs	sītĭs	sint
S. Fut.	ĕrō	ĕris	ĕrĭt				ĕrĭmŭs	ĕrĭtĭs	ĕrunt			
Imp.	ĕram	ĕrās	ĕrăt	essem	essēs	essĕt	ĕrāmŭs	ĕrātĭs	ĕrant	essēmŭs	essētĭs	essent
Perf.	fŭ-ī	-istī	-ĭt	fŭ-ĕrim	-ĕrĭs	-ĕrĭt	fŭ-ĭmus	-istĭs	-ērunt	fŭ-ĕrĭmŭs	-ĕrĭtĭs	-ĕrint
Fut. P.	fŭ-ĕrō	-ĕrĭs	-ĕrĭt				fŭ-ĕrĭmŭs	-ĕrĭtĭs	-ĕrint			
Plupf.	fŭ-ĕram	-ĕrās	-ĕrăt	fŭ-issem	-issēs	-issĕt	fŭ-ĕrāmŭs	-ĕrātĭs	-ĕrant	fŭ-issēmŭs	-issētĭs	-issent
	Indic. M.			Conj. M.			Indic. M.			Conj. M.		

Infin. Pres. essĕ
„ Perf. fuĭssĕ.

In translating, it is only required to construe each part of the Verb sum, as given in the Table, § 50, with each Participle: as, ămātūrŭs sum, *I am about to love*; ămandŭs sum, *I am meet to be loved* (or, *I am to be loved*). So also fŭtūrŭs sum, *I am about to be;* fŭtūrŭs sim, ĕram, essem, &c.

SIGNS OF THE TENSES AND MOODS.

§ 65. The Latin Tenses may be variously rendered: as,

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. ămō, *love, am loving.*

Imp. ămābam, *loved, was loving, used to love.*

Perf. ămāvī, *loved* (Simple Past), *have loved* (Present Past).

§ 66. The Conjunctive Mood has two general uses:

(1) Pure, or not subordinate to another Verb:

(2) Subjunctive, or subordinate to another Verb.

1. The Pure Conjunctive is rendered in English with auxiliary Verbs for Signs; generally *would* or *should*; sometimes *can, could*; *may, might*; *shall,* or *will*: as,

ămem tē (sī bŏnŭs sīs),
I can love you (*if you are good*).

ămārem tē (sī bŏnŭs essēs),
I should—would—love you (*if you were good*), or
I should have been loving you (*if you were good*).

ămāvissem tē (sī bŏnŭs fŭissēs or essēs),
I should—would—have loved you (*had you been good*).

2. When the Mood is Subjunctive, it sometimes has a sign in English: as, Ĕdĕ ŭt vīvās, *eat that you* may *live*; but oftener it must be rendered as if it were Indicative: as sīs, essēs, fŭissēs, in the last Examples. So:

Laudātŭr quŏd pārŭĕrĭt, *he is praised* in that he obeyed.
Laudāvī ĕum quī pārŭissĕt, *I praised him* (as one) who had obeyed.

§ 67. The Present Conjunctive is also used Imperatively:

Active.		Passive.	
Ămem, *may I,* or *let me*	*love.*	Ămĕr, *may I,* or *let me*	*be loved.*
Āmēs, *mayst thou,* or *see thou*		Āmērĭs, *mayst thou,* or *see thou*	
Ămĕt, *may he,* or *let him*		Ămētŭr, *may he,* or *let him*	
Ămēmŭs, *may we,* or *let us*		Ămēmŭr, *may we,* or *let us*	
Ămētĭs, *may ye,* or *see ye*		Ămēmĭnī, *may ye,* or *see ye*	
Ăment, *may they,* or *let them*		Ămentŭr, *may they,* or *let them*	

THE INFINITIVES.

§ 68. The Infinitives in rĕ, rī, are Present or Imperfect; Infinitives in issĕ, tŭs-essĕ, Perfect or Pluperfect: as,

(1) Dīcĭtŭr ămārĕ, *He is said to be loving.*	(1) Dīcĭtŭr ămārī, *He is said to be loved.*
Dīcēbatŭr ămārĕ, *He was said to have been loving.*	Dīcēbātŭr ămārī, *He was said to have been* (at the time) *loved.*
Scĭŏ ĕum ămārĕ, *I know* (that) *he is loving.*	Scĭŏ ĕum ămārī, *I know* (that) *he is loved.*
Scīēbam ĕum ămārĕ, *I knew* (that) *he was loving.*	Scīēbam ĕum ămārī, *I knew* (that) *he was loved.*
(2) Dīcĭtŭr ămāvissĕ, *He is said to have loved.*	(2) Dīcĭtŭr ămātŭs essĕ, *He is said to have been loved.*
Dīcēbātŭr ămāvissĕ, *He was said to have loved.*	Dīcēbātŭr ămātŭs essĕ, *He was said to have been* (at a former time) *loved.*
Scĭŏ ĕum ămāvissĕ, *I know* (that) *he loved.* *I know* (that) *he has loved.*	Scĭŏ ĕum ămātum essĕ, *I know he was loved.* *I know he has been loved.*
Scīēbam ĕum ămāvissĕ, *I knew* (that) *he had loved.*	Scīēbam ĕum ămātum essĕ, *I knew he had been loved.*

§ 69. *A.* The Future Infinitive Active has two forms, -ūrŭs essĕ, -ūrŭs fŭissĕ, the uses of which a few instances will show:—

(*a*) Crēdĕrĭs ĭtūrŭs essĕ, *you are believed to be about to go.*
Crēdō tē ĭtūrum essĕ, *I believe* (that) *you will go.*

(*b*) Crēdēbārĭs ĭtūrŭs essĕ, *you were believed to be about to go.*
Crēdēbam tē ĭtūrum essĕ, *I believed that you would go.*

(*c*) Crēdĕrĭs ĭtūrŭs fŭissĕ, *you are believed to have been about to go.*
Crēdō tē ĭtūrum fŭissĕ, *I believe that you would have gone.*

B. The Future Infinitive Passive is formed by the union of the Supine in um with the Impersonal Infinitive īrī: as,

Crēdō ămātūm īrī Jūlĭam, (lit.) *I believe there-is-a-going to love Julia* i.e., *I believe Julia will be loved.*

Aiunt ultum īrī injūrĭās, *they say that the wrongs will be avenged.*

a. The same may be expressed by fūtūrum essĕ ŭt, fŏrĕ ŭt, with ămētŭr, ămārētŭr; as,

Crēdō fūtūrum-essĕ (*or* fŏrĕ) ŭt Jūlĭă ămētŭr, *I believe* (that) *Julia will be loved.*

Crēdēbam fŏrĕ ŭt Jūlĭă ămārētŭr, *I believed* (that) *Julia would be loved.*

GERUND.—SUPINES.—PARTICIPLES.

§ 70. *A.* The Gerund is perhaps the Neuter Gerundive Participle declined as a Verb-Noun (um, ī, ō).

B. The Supines are Cases (Accusative and Ablative) of a Verb-Noun of the Fourth Declension.

C. The Gerundive (ŭs, ă, um, like bŏnŭs) is used to express meetness or necessity, either impersonally, as, ĕundum est, *one must go*; or personally, as, vītă tŭendă est, *life should be protected.* If a Case of the Person is added, that Case is usually the Dative: as, ĕundum est mĭhĭ, *I must go*; vītă nōbīs tŭendă est, *life should be protected by us.*

D. The other Participles are—

Active.	Pres. ămans, *loving*,	like ingens.	
	Fut. ămātūrŭs, *about to love*,	} like bŏnŭs.	
Passive.	Perf. ămātŭs, *loved*,	}	

The three Participles wanting may be thus supplied:

Act. Part. Perf. '*having loved*,' quum ămāvissĕt (or by § 125.)
Pass. Part. Pres. '*being loved*,' quī ămātŭr, *or* dum ămātŭr.
,, Part. Fut. '*about to be loved*,' quī ămābĭtŭr.

E. Some Verbs form Participials in bundŭs or cundŭs, expressing 'fulness,' as, văgābundŭs, *wandering*, īrācundŭs, *wrathful*; in bĭlĭs, expressing 'possibility,' as, părābĭlĭs, *procurable*; in ĭlĭs, expressing 'capacity,' as, dŏcĭlĭs, *teachable*; in ax, expressing 'inclination,' as, lŏquax, *talkative*; in ĭdŭs, expressing 'active force,' as, răpĭdŭs, *hurrying*, cŭpĭdŭs, *desirous.*

DERIVED VERBS.

§ 71. I. Frequentative Verbs express repeated action, are of the First Conjugation, and formed either in *-tō, -sō*, from Supine-stems: as, cantō, *I sing often* (cănō, cantum), cursō, *I run often* (currō, cursum); or by adding *-ĭ-tō, -ĭ-tŏr* to the Clipt Stem, as, rŏgĭtō, *I ask often* (rŏgō).

II. Inceptive Verbs express beginning of action, are of the Third Conjugation, and formed by adding *-scō* to the Present-stem: as,

Lăbascō,	*I begin to totter,*	from lăbārĕ.
Pallescō,	*I turn pale,*	,, pallērĕ.

Or from Nouns, with suffix *-a-scō* or *-e-scō*; as,

Pŭĕrascō,	*I become a boy,*	from pŭĕr.
Mītescō,	*I become mild,*	,, mītĭs.

III. Desiderative Verbs express the desire of action, are of the Fourth Conjugation, and formed by adding *-ŭrĭō* to the Supine-stem as,

Ēsŭrĭō,	*I am hungry,*	from ĕdō, ēs-um.
Partŭrĭō,	*I am in labour,*	,, părĭō, part-um.

QUASI-PASSIVE AND SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 72. The Verbs which unite an Active form with a Passive meaning are:

Exŭlō, *I am banished* (ārĕ).	Vāpŭlŏ, *I am beaten* (ārĕ).
Fīō, *I am made.*	Vēnĕŏ, *I am on sale* (īrĕ).
Lĭcĕō, *I am put to auction.*	

§ 73. The Verbs which have an Active Present with a Perfect of Passive form, are:

Audĕŏ, *I dare,*	Perf. ausŭs sum, *I dared.*
Fīdō, *I trust,*	,, fīsŭs sum, *I trusted.*
Gaudĕō, *I am glad,*	,, gāvīsŭs sum, *I was glad.*
Sŏlĕō, *I am wont,*	,, sŏlĭtŭs sum, *I was wont.*

Some have Active Perfect with Deponent Perfect Participles: as,

Present.	Perfect.	Part. Perf.
Jūrō, *I swear*	jūrāvī, *I swore*	jūrātŭs, *having sworn.*
Cēnō, *I sup*	cēnāvī, *I supped*	cēnātŭs, *having supped.*
Prandĕō, *I dine*	prandī, *I dined*	prānsŭs, *having dined.*

So nuptă, *wedded*, pōtŭs, *having drunk*, and some others.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs want some of the usual parts of a Verb.

§ 74. I. The Verbs coepī, *I have begun*, ōdī, *I hate*, mĕmĭnī, *I remember*, have no Present-stem Tenses.

SCHEME.

	Indic.	Conj.	Infin.	
Coep-	ī	ĕrim	issĕ	Perf.
Ōd-	ĕrō	. . .	. . .	Fut. Perf.
Mĕmĭn-	ĕram	issem	issĕ	Plup.

Mĕmĭnī has Imperative Fut. Sing. mĕmentō; Plur. mĕmentōtĕ.
Coepī has Part. Perf. coeptŭs; Fut. coeptūrŭs.
Ōdī ,, ,, ōsŭs ,, ōsūrŭs.
a. Nōvī, *I know* (from noscō), is similarly used.

II. Many Verbs have Perfect without Supine (see Table), and many Inceptive and other Verbs have neither Perfect nor Supine: as, mītescō, pollĕō, fŭrō, fĕrĭō.

III. Verbs Defective in other forms:

(1) Aiō, *I say* '*ay*,' *affirm.*

Indic. Pres.	aiō,	ăĭs,	ăĭt	——	——	aiunt.
,, Imperf.	aiēbam, -bās, &c., complete.					
Conj. Pres.	——	aiās,	aiăt	——	——	aiant.

(2) Inquam, *I say.*

Indic. Pres.	inquam,	inquĭs,	inquĭt,	inquĭmŭs ——	inquĭunt.
,, Imperf.	——	——	inquiēbăt	——	—— inquiēbant.
,, S. Fut.	——	inquiēs,	inquiĕt.		
,, Perf.	——	inquistī,	inquĭt.		
Imper. Pres.		inquĕ	——	——	inquĭtĕ.

(3) Quaesō, *I entreat*; 1st Pers. Pl. quaesŭmŭs.

(4) Fārī, *to speak*; used by the Poets in this and a few other forms: as, fātŭr, *he speaks*; fābŏr, *I shall speak*; fārĕ, *speak thou.* Participles: fātŭs; fandŭs. Gerund: fandī, fandō.

(5) The Imperatives:

a. Ăpăgĕ, *begone.*
Cĕdŏ, cĕdĭtĕ (*or* cettĕ), *give here.*
Hăvē (*or* ăvē), hăvētĕ, *hail.* Infin. hăvērĕ.
Salvē, salvētĕ, *hail.* Infin. salvērĕ. Fut. salvēbĭs.
b. Ăgĕ, ăgĭtĕ, *come*; Vălē, vălētĕ, *farewell*; Infin. vălērĕ; are used with special meaning, but their Verbs ăgō, vălĕō, are fully conjugated.

Impersonal Verbs.

§ 75. Impersonal Verbs are conjugated (as such) only in the Third Persons Singular of the Finite Verb, and in the Infinitive.

A. Active Impersonals have no Passive Voice.

(1) The principal of these are of the Second Conjugation:

Ŏportĕt, dĕcĕt, dēdĕcĕt,	*it behoves, beseems, misbeseems,*
Pĭgĕt, pŭdĕt, paenĭtĕt,	*it irks, shames, repents,*
Taedĕt add and mĭsĕrĕt,	*it disgusts, moves pity,*
Lĭbĕt, lĭcĕt, and lĭquĕt,	*it pleases, is lawful, is clear,*
Attĭnĕt and pertĭnĕt.	*it relates, belongs.*

Conjugation of Impersonal Verbs (Second).

		Indic.	Conjunc.	Infin.	
	1. Ŏport-				
	2. Dĕc-				
	3. Dēdĕc-				
mē, tē, ĕum,	4. Pĭg-	ĕt	ĕăt	ērĕ.	Pres.
nōs, vōs, ĕōs	5. Pŭd-	ēbĭt.			S. Fut.
	6. Paenĭt-	ēbăt	ērĕt.		Imperf.
	7. Taed-	ŭĭt	ŭĕrĭt	ŭissĕ.	Perf.
	8 Mĭsĕr-	ŭĕrĭt.			Fut. Perf.
mĭhĭ, etc.	9. Lĭb-	ŭĕrăt	ŭissĕt.		Pluperf.
	10. Lĭc-				
ăd mē, etc.	11. Attĭn-				
	12. Pertĭn-				

The Persons are expressed by the Case: as,

Sing.	Ŏportĕt mē īrĕ,	*it behoves me*		or *I*	
	ŏportĕt tē īrĕ,	,, ,, *you*		*you*	
	ŏportĕt ĕum īrĕ,	,, ,, *him*	*to go,*	*he*	*ought to go.*
Plur.	ŏportĕt nōs īrĕ,	,, ,, *us*		*we*	
	ŏportĕt vōs īrĕ,	,, ,, *you*		*ye*	
	ŏportĕt ĕōs īrĕ,	,, ,, *them*		*they*	

Sing.	Lĭcĕt mĭhĭ īrĕ,	*it is allowed me*		or *I*	
	lĭcĕt tĭbĭ īrĕ,	,, ,, *you*		*you*	
	lĭcĕt ĕī īrĕ,	,, ,, *him*	*to go,*	*he*	*may go.*
Plur.	lĭcĕt nōbīs īrĕ,	,, ,, *us*		*we*	
	lĭcĕt vōbīs īrĕ,	,, ,, *you*		*ye*	
	lĭcĕt īīs īrĕ,	,, ,, *them*		*they*	

So in the other Tenses and Moods.

(2) Among Impersonal Verbs of other Conjugations are:

Accĭdĭt,	*it happens*	mĭhī, tĭbĭ, ĕī, etc.	Dēlectăt,	*it charms*	mē, tē, ĕum, etc.
Contingĭt,	*it befalls*		Jŭvăt,	*it delights*	
Ēvĕnĭt,	*it turns out*		Intĕrest,	*it concerns*	mĕā, tŭā, ējŭs, etc.
Convĕnĭt,	*it suits*		Rēfert,	*it imports*	
Expĕdĭt,	*it is expedient*		Constăt,	*it is acknowledged.*	

(3) Some Impersonals express *changes* of *season* and *weather*: as,

Fulgŭrăt, *it lightens.*	Tŏnăt, *it thunders.*
Ningĭt, *it snows.*	Lūcescĭt, *it dawns.*
Plŭĭt, *it rains.*	Vesperascĭt, *it gets late.*

§ 76. *B.* (1) Intransitive Verbs are used impersonally in the Passive Voice: as, lūdĭtŭr, *there is playing*, from lūdō, *I play.*

	Indicative.	Conjunctive.	Infinitive.
Present	Lūdĭtŭr	lūdātŭr	lūdī.
Simple Fut.	lūdētŭr		lūsum īrī.
Imperf.	lūdēbātŭr	lūdĕrētŭr.	
Perfect	lūsum est	lūsum sĭt	lūsum essĕ.
Fut. Perf.	lūsum ĕrĭt		
Pluperf.	lūsum ĕrăt	lūsum essĕt	lūsum fŭissĕ.

The Persons may be expressed by an Ablative of the Agent: as,

Present Indicative.

Sing.	Lūdĭtŭr ā mē, *there is playing by me,*			or *I play,*
	lūdĭtŭr ā tē,	,,	*thee,*	*thou playest,*
	lūdĭtŭr ăb ĕō,	,,	*him,*	*he plays,*
Plur.	lūdĭtŭr ā nōbīs,	,,	*us,*	*we play,*
	lūdĭtŭr ā vōbīs	,,	*you,*	*ye play,*
	lūdĭtŭr ăb īīs,	,,	*them,*	*they play.*

But the Ablative is often omitted, being understood from the context.

§ 77. (2) The Neuter Gerundive is used impersonally with essĕ to express meetness or necessity: sometimes with Dative of Person.

Present Indicative.

Sing.	Lūdendum est mĭhĭ, *there must be playing by me,*				or *I*	*must play.*
	lūdendum est tĭbĭ,	,,	,,	,, *thee,*	*thou*	
	lūdendum est ĕī,	,,	,,	,, *him,*	*he*	
Plur.	lūdendum est nōbīs,	,,	,,	,, *us,*	*we*	
	lūdendum est vōbīs	,,	,,	,, *you,*	*ye*	
	lūdendum est īīs,	,,	,,	,, *them,*	*they*	

Here too the Case is often omitted: nunc est bĭbendum, *now we* (or *men*) *must drink.*

ANOMALOUS VERBS.

§ 78. Anomalous Verbs do not form all their parts according to rule. Sometimes their Tenses are *borrowed* from several stems, as in sum, possum, fĕrō; sometimes their irregularities arise from mutation of *letters*, as in vŏlŏ, nōlŏ, mālŏ, ĕō, quĕō, ĕdō.

§ 79. Conjugation-Form of Anomalous Verbs.

	1. *Be able.*	2. *Wish.*	3. *Not-wish.*	4. *Wish-rather.*
1 Pers. Pres.	Possum	Vŏlŏ	Nōlŏ	Mālŏ
2 Pers. ,,	pŏtĕs	vīs	nonvīs	māvīs
Infin. ,,	possĕ	vellĕ	nollĕ	mallĕ
Perfect	pŏtŭ-ī	vŏlŭ-ī	nōlŭ-ī	mālŭ-ī
Ger. in *dum*	—	(vŏlend-um)	(nōlend-um)	(mālend-um)
,, *dī*	—	vŏlend-ī	nōlend-ī	mālend-ī
,, *dō*	—	vŏlend-ō	nōlend-ō	mālend-ō
Part. Pres.	—	vŏlens	nōlens	mālens

Pŏtens, *able, powerful,* is used as an Adjective.

	5. *Bear.*	6. *Be made.*	7. *Go.*	8. *Can.*
1 Pers. Pres.	Fĕrō	Fīō	Ĕō	Quĕŏ
2 Pers. ,,	fers	fīs	īs	quīs
Infin. ,,	ferrĕ	fĭĕrī	īrĕ	quīrĕ
Perfect	tŭlī	factŭs sum	īvī	quīvī
Ger. in *dum*	fĕrend-um	—	ĕund-um	
,, *dī*	fĕrend-ī	—	ĕund-ī	
,, *dō*	fĕrend-ō	—	ĕund-ō	
Supine in *um*	lāt-um	—	ĭt-um	
,, *ū*	lāt-ū	—	ĭt-ū	
Part. Pres.	fĕr-ens	—	ĭens (ĕunt-ĭs)	
,, Fut.	lāt-ūrŭs	—	ĭt-ūrŭs	

5. Fĕrŏr (Passive) has Pres. Ind. 2. ferrĭs (for fĕr-ĕrĭs); 3. fertŭr; Imperf. Conj. fĕr-r-ĕr (for fĕr-ĕrĕr), ferrērĭs, etc., and Inf. ferrī. Other Present-stem forms are regular. Supine-stem forms, lātŭs sum, etc.

6. Fīō in the Present-stem forms is the Passive of făcĭō, which is regular in the Active, and in the Supine-stem forms, of the Passive.

8. Qŭeo and its compound nĕquĕō (*cannot*) form their tenses like ĕō.

9 Ĕdō, *I eat,* often changes some of its forms as follows

Pres. 2nd Pers.	3rd Pers.	Infin.	Imperf. Conj.
ĕdĭs *or* ēs	ĕdĭt *or* est	ĕdĕrĕ *or* essĕ	ĕdĕrem *or* essem.

Pres. Conj. ĕdim, ĕdīs, ĕdĭt, is used. Other forms are regular.

§ 80. TENSE-FORMATION OF

INDICATIVE MOOD.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Present Tense.		Possum	pŏtĕs	pŏtest	possŭmŭs	pŏtestĭs	pōssūnt
		Vŏlŏ	vīs	vult	vŏlŭmŭs	vultĭs	vŏlunt
		Nōlŏ	nonvīs	nonvult	nōlŭmŭs	nonvultĭs	nōlunt
		Mālŏ	māvīs	māvult	mālŭmŭs	māvultĭs	mālunt
		Fĕrō	fers	fert	fĕrĭmŭs	fertĭs	fĕrunt
		Fīō	fīs	fīt	—	—	fīunt
		Ēō	īs	ĭt	īmŭs	ītĭs	ĕunt
Imperfect.	Pŏt-	ĕram	ĕrās	ĕrăt	ĕrāmŭs	ĕrātĭs	ĕrant
	Vŏlē-, Nōlē-, Mālē-, Fĕrē-, Fīē-, Ī-	bam	bās	băt	bāmŭs	bātĭs	bant
Perfect.	Pŏtŭ-, Vŏlŭ-, Nōlŭ-, Mālŭ-, Tŭl-, Īv-	ī	istī	ĭt	ĭmŭs	istĭs	ērunt *or* ērĕ
Pluperfect.	Pŏtŭ-, Vŏlŭ-, Nōlŭ-, Mālŭ-, Tŭl-, Īv-	ĕram	ĕrās	ĕrăt	ĕrāmŭs	ĕrātĭs	ĕrant
Future Simple.	Pŏt-	ĕrō	ĕrĭs	ĕrĭt	ĕrĭmŭs	ĕrĭtĭs	ĕrunt
	Vŏl-, Nōl-, Māl-, Fĕr-, Fī-	am	ēs	ĕt	ēmŭs	ētĭs	ent
	Ī-	bō	bĭs	bĭt	bĭmŭs	bĭtĭs	bunt
Future Perfect.	Pŏtŭ-, Vŏlŭ-, Nōlŭ-, Mālŭ-, Tŭl-, Īv-	ĕrō	ĕrĭs	ĕrĭt	ĕrĭmŭs	ĕrĭtĭs	ĕrint

Anomalous Verbs.

Conjunctive Mood.

	Singular. 1.	2.	3.	Plural. 1.	2.	3.
Poss- Vĕl- Nōl- Māl-	im	īs	ĭt	īmŭs	ītĭs	int
Fĕr- Fī- Ĕ-	am	ās	ăt	āmŭs	ātĭs	ant
Poss- Vell- Noll- Mall- Ferr- Fĭĕr- Īr-	em	ēs	ĕt	ēmŭs	ētĭs	ent
Pŏtŭ- Vōlŭ- Nōlŭ- Mālŭ- Tŭl- Īv-	ĕrim	ĕrĭs	ĕrĭt	ĕrĭmŭs	ĕrĭtĭs	ĕrint
Pŏtŭ- Vŏlŭ- Nōlŭ- Mālŭ- Tŭl- Īv-	issem	issēs	issĕt	issēmŭs	issētĭs	issent

Imperative Mood.

Present.

Singular. 2.	Plural. 2.
(3) Nōlī	nōlītĕ
(5) Fĕr	fertĕ
(6) Fī	fītĕ
(7) Ī	ītĕ

Future.

2.	3.	2.	3.
(3) Nōlītō	nōlītō	nōlītōtĕ	nōluntō
(6) Fertō	fertō	fērtōtĕ	fĕruntō
(7) Ītō	ītō	ītōtĕ	ĕuntō

(For the Parts of Verb Infinite, see Form of Conjugation, § 79.)

§ 81. TABLE OF VERBS, SHOWING PRESENT, INFINITIVE, PERFECT, AND SUPINE. (See § 48, Note 2.)

I. First Conjugation (Character **A**: ĂmĀ- rĕ).

	Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.
Usual Form:	(ă-ō) -ō		ā-vi	ā-tum
	Ăm-ō	-ārĕ	ămā-vī	ămā-tum.

Exceptions.

-ŭī, -ĭtum.

	Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
(1) 1.	Crĕpō	-ārĕ	crĕpŭī	crĕpĭtum	*creak.*
2.	Cŭbō	-ārĕ	cŭbŭī	cŭbĭtum	*lie down.*
3.	Dŏmō	-ārĕ	dŏmŭī	dŏmĭtum	*tame.*
4.	Mĭcō	-ārĕ	mĭcŭī	—	*glitter.*
5.	Plĭcō	-ārĕ	-plĭcŭī	-plĭcĭtum	*fold.*
6.	Sŏnō	-ārĕ	sŏnŭī	sŏnĭtum	*sound.*
7.	Tŏnō	-ārĕ	tŏnŭī	tŏnĭtum	*thunder.*
8.	Vĕtŏ	-ārĕ	vĕtŭī	vĕtĭtum	*forbid.*

-ŭī, -tum.

(2)	Sĕcō	-ārĕ	sĕcŭī	sectum	*cut.*

Redupl., -tum.

(3) 1.	Dō	-ārĕ	dĕdī	dătum	*give.*
2.	Stō	-ārĕ	stĕtī	stātum	*stand.*

-vī, -tum.

(4) 1.	Jŭvō	-ārĕ	jūvī	jūtum	*help.*
2.	Lăvō	-ārĕ	lāvī	lōtum	*wash.*

(1) 5. Also plĭcāvī, plĭcātum.
(3) 1. Dō, dărĕ, has short ă throughout; with the compounds circumdō, *surround*; pessumdō, *ruin*; vēnumdō, *put on sale*, which form -dĕdī, -dătum. The other compounds pass to the Third Conj. and form -dĭdī, -dĭtum. III. 18.
2. Comp. ad- con- ob- per- prae-stō, etc., form stĭtī, stātum (-stĭtum, rare).

II. Second Conjugation (Character **E**: MonĒ- rĕ).

Usual Form:	-ĕō		-ŭī	-ĭtum
	Mŏn-ĕō	-ērĕ	mŏn-ŭī	mŏn-ĭtum.

Exceptions.

-vī, -tum.

(1) 1.	Dēlĕō	-ērĕ	dēlēvī	dēlētum	*blot out.*
2.	Flĕō	-ērĕ	flēvī	flētum	*weep.*
3.	-plĕō	-ērĕ	-plēvī	-plētum	*fill.*

-ŭī, -tum.

(2) 1.	Dŏcĕō	-ērĕ	dŏcŭī	doctum	*teach.*
2.	Miscĕō	-ērĕ	miscŭī	mistum	*mix.*
3.	Tĕnĕō	-ērĕ	tĕnŭī	-tentum	*hold.*

(1) 3. Forms thus described are only used in the compounds.

-sī, -tum.

	Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
(3) 1.	Augĕō	-ērĕ	auxī	auctum	*increase.*
2.	Torquĕō	-ērĕ	torsī	tortum	*twist.*
3.	Lūgĕō	-ērĕ	luxī	—	*mourn.*

-sī, -sum.

(4) 1.	Mulcĕō	-ērĕ	mulsī	mulsum	*soothe.*
2.	Ardĕō	-ērĕ	arsī	arsum	*take fire.*
3.	Rīdĕō	-ērĕ	rīsī	rīsum	*laugh.*
4.	Suādĕō	-ērĕ	suāsī	suāsum	*advise.*
5.	Mănĕō	-ērĕ	mansī	mansum	*remain.*
6.	Jŭbĕō	-ērĕ	jussī	jussum	*command.*
7.	Haerĕō	-ērĕ	haesī	haesum	*stick.*
8.	Fulgĕō	-ērĕ	fulsī	—	*glitter.*
9.	Lūcĕō	-ērĕ	luxī	—	*shine.*

Redupl., -sum.

(5) 1.	Mordĕō	-ērĕ	mŏmordī	morsum	*bite.*
2.	Pendĕō	-ērĕ	pĕpendī	pensum	*hang.*
3.	Spondĕō	-ērĕ	spŏpondī	sponsum	*pledge, promise.*
4.	Tondĕō	-ērĕ	tŏtondī	tonsum	*shear.*

-ī, -sum.

(6) 1.	Prandĕō	-ērĕ	prandī	pransum	*lunch, dine.*
2.	Sĕdĕō	-ērĕ	sēdī	sessum	*sit.*
3.	Vīdĕō	-ērĕ	vīdī	vīsum	*see.*

-ī, -tum.

(7) 1.	Căvĕō	-ērĕ	cāvī	cautum	*beware.*
2.	Făvĕō	-ērĕ	fāvī	fautum	*favour.*
3.	Fŏvĕō	-ērĕ	fōvī	fōtum	*cherish.*
4.	Mŏvĕō	-ērĕ	mōvī	mōtum	*move.*
5.	Vŏvĕō	-ērĕ	vōvī	vōtum	*vow.*

Semi-deponent.

(8) 1.	Audĕō	-ērĕ	ausŭs sum	—	*dare.*
2.	Gaudĕō	-ērĕ	gāvīsŭs sum	—	*rejoice.*
3.	Sŏlĕō	-ērĕ	sŏlĭtŭs sum	—	*be wont.*

III. Third Conjugation (Character a **Consonant** or **U**).

Form various. Rĕg-ĕrĕ; Indŭ-ĕrĕ.

A. Consonant-Verbs.

Guttural Stems, -sī, -tum (*five* -sum).

(1) 1.	Dīcō	-ĕrĕ	dixī	dictum	*say.*
2.	Dūcō	-ĕrĕ	duxī	ductum	*lead.*
3.	Cingō	-ĕrĕ	cinxī	cinctum	*surround.*
4.	Cŏquō	-ĕrĕ	coxī	coctum	*cook.*
5.	Fīgō	-ĕrĕ	fixī	fixum	*fix.*
6.	Fingō	-ĕrĕ	finxī	fictum	*fashion.*
7.	Jungō	-ĕrĕ	junxī	junctum	*join.*

	Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
	8. Pingō	-ĕrĕ	pinxī	pictum	*paint.*
	9. Rĕgō	-ĕrĕ	rexī	rectum	*rule.*
	10. Tĕgō	-ĕrĕ	texī	tectum	*cover.*
	11. -stinguō	-ĕrĕ	-stinxī	-stinctum	*quench.*
	12. Tinguō	-ĕrĕ	tinxī	tinctum	*dye.*
	13. Unguō	-ĕrĕ	unxī	unctum	*anoint.*
(2)	1. Trăhō	-ĕrĕ	traxī	tractum	*draw.*
	2. Vĕhō	-ĕrĕ	vexī	vectum	*carry.*
	3. Vīvō	-ĕrĕ	vixī	victum	*live.*
	4. Flŭō	-ĕrĕ	fluxī	fluxum	*flow.*
	5. Strŭō	-ĕrĕ	struxī	structum	*pile.*
	6. -lăcĭō	-ĕrĕ	-lexī	-lectum	*entice.*
	7. -spĕcĭō	-ĕrĕ	-spexī	-spectum	*espy.*
(3)	1. Mergō	-ĕrĕ	mersī	mersum	*drown.*
	2. Spargō	-ĕrĕ	sparsī	sparsum	*sprinkle.*
	3. Tergō	-ĕrĕ	tersī	tersum	*wipe.*

Dental Stems, -sī, -sum.

(4)	1. Claudō	-ĕrĕ	clausī	clausum	*shut.*
	2. Dīvĭdō	-ĕrĕ	dīvīsī	dīvīsum	*divide.*
	3. Laedō	-ĕrĕ	laesī	laesum	*hurt.*
	4. Lūdō	-ĕrĕ	lūsī	lūsum	*play.*
	5. Plaudō	-ĕrĕ	plausī	plausum	*clap the hands.*
	6. Rādō	-ĕrĕ	rāsī	rāsum	*scrape.*
	7. Rōdō	-ĕrĕ	rōsī	rōsum	*gnaw.*
	8. Trūdō	-ĕrĕ	trūsī	trūsum	*thrust.*
	9. Vādō	-ĕrĕ	-vāsī	-vāsum	*go.*
	10. Cēdō	-ĕrĕ	cessī	cessum	*yield.*
	11. Mittō	-ĕrĕ	mīsī	missum	*send.*
	12. Quăt-ĭō	-ĕrĕ	(quassī)	quassum	*shake.*
	13. Flectō	-ĕrĕ	flexī	flexum	*bend.*
	14. Nectō	-ĕrĕ	nexī	nexum	*bind.*

Labial Stems, -sī, -tum.

(5)	1. Carpō	-ĕrĕ	carpsī	carptum	*pluck.*
	2. Repō	-ĕrĕ	repsī	reptum	*creep.*
	3. Scalpō	-ĕrĕ	scalpsī	scalptum	*scratch.*
	4. Serpō	-ĕrĕ	(serpsī)	(serptum)	*crawl.*
	5. Nūbō	-ĕrĕ	nupsī	nuptum	*be married.*
	6. Scrībō	-ĕrĕ	scripsī	scriptum	*write.*

Liquid Stems, -sī, -tum (*one* -sum).

(6)	1. Cōmō	-ĕrĕ	compsī	comptum	*adorn.*
	2. Dēmō	-ĕrĕ	dempsī	demptum	*take away.*
	3. Prōmō	-ĕrĕ	prompsī	promptum	*take forth.*
	4. Sūmō	-ĕrĕ	sumpsī	sumptum	*take.*
	5. Temnō	-ĕrĕ	tempsī	temptum	*despise.*
	6. Prĕmō	-ĕrĕ	pressī	pressum	*press.*
	7. Gĕrō	-ĕrĕ	gessī	gestum	*carry on.*
	8. Ūrō	-ĕrĕ	ussī	ustum	*burn.*

Stem various, -ŭī, -tum (*one* -sum).

	Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
(7) 1.	Ēlĭcĭō	-ĕrĕ	ēlĭcŭī	ēlĭcĭtum	*entice forth.*
2.	Cumbō	-ĕrĕ	cŭbŭī	cŭbĭtum	*lie down.*
3.	Răpĭō	-ĕrĕ	răpŭī	raptum	*seize.*
4.	Strĕpō	-ĕrĕ	strĕpŭī	strĕpĭtum	*roar.*
5.	Mĕtō	-ĕrĕ	messŭī	messum	*mow.*
6.	Alō	-ĕrĕ	ălŭī	altum	*nourish.*
7.	Cŏlō	-ĕrĕ	cŏlŭi	cultum	*till.*
8.	Consŭlō	-ĕrĕ	consŭlŭī	consultum	*consult.*
9.	Occŭlō	-ĕrĕ	occŭlŭī	occultum	*hide.*
10.	Vŏlō	-ĕrĕ	vŏlŭī	—	*wish.*
11.	Frĕmō	-ĕrĕ	frĕmŭī	frĕmĭtum	*murmur.*
12.	Gĕmō	-ĕrĕ	gĕmŭī	gĕmĭtum	*groan.*
13.	Trĕmō	-ĕrĕ	trĕmŭī	—	*tremble.*
14.	Vŏmō	-ĕrĕ	vŏmŭī	vŏmĭtum	*vomit.*
15.	Pōnō	-ĕrĕ	pŏsŭī	pŏsĭtum	*place.*
16.	Gignō	-ĕrĕ	gĕnŭī	gĕnĭtum	*produce.*
17.	Sĕrō	-ĕrĕ	sĕrŭī	sertum	*join.*
18.	Texō	-ĕrĕ	texŭī	textum	*weave.*

Present Stem Anomalous, -vī, -tum.

(8) 1.	Lĭnō	-ĕrĕ	lēvī	lĭtum	*smear.*
2.	Sĭnō	-ĕrĕ	sīvī	sĭtum	*allow.*
3.	Cernō	-ĕrĕ	crēvī	crētum	*sift, discern.*
4.	Spernō	-ĕrĕ	sprēvī	sprētum	*despise.*
5.	Sternō	-ĕrĕ	strāvī	strātum	*strew.*
6.	Sĕrō	-ĕrĕ	sēvī	sătum	*sow.*
7.	Crescō	-ĕrĕ	crēvī	crētum	*grow.* [*with.*
8.	Noscō	-ĕrĕ	nōvī	nōtum	*become acquainted*
9.	Pascō	-ĕrĕ	pāvī	pastum	*feed.*
10.	Quĭescō	-ĕrĕ	quĭēvī	—	*rest.*
11.	Suescō	-ĕrĕ	suēvī	suētum	*be wont.*
12.	Cupĭō	-ĕrĕ	cŭpīvī	cŭpītum	*desire.*
13.	Pĕtō	-ĕrĕ	pĕtīvī	pĕtītum	*seek.*
14.	Quaerō	-ĕrĕ	quaesīvī	quaesītum	*seek.*
15.	Tĕrō	-ĕrĕ	trīvī	trītum	*rub.*
16.	Arcessō	-ĕrĕ	arcessīvī	arcessītum	*send for.*
17.	Lăcessō	-ĕrĕ	lăcessīvī	lăcessītum	*provoke.*

Redupl., -tum *or* -sum.

(9) 1.	Pendō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpendī	pensum	*weigh.*
2.	Tendō	-ĕrĕ	tĕtendī	tensum(-tum)	*stretch.*
3.	Discō	-ĕrĕ	dĭdĭcī	—	*learn.*
4.	Poscō	-ĕrĕ	pŏposcī	—	*demand.*
5.	Currō	-ĕrĕ	cŭcurrī	cursum	*run.*
6.	Pungō	-ĕrĕ	pŭpŭgī	punctum	*prick.*
7.	Tundō	-ĕrĕ	tŭtŭdī	tunsum	*thump.*
8.	Fallō	-ĕrĕ	fĕfellī	falsum	*deceive.*
9.	Parcō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpercī	parsum	*spare.*
10.	Părĭō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpĕrī	partum	*bring forth.*

	Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
11.	Căd-ō	-ĕrĕ	cĕcĭdī	cāsum	*fall.*
12.	Căn-ō	-ĕrĕ	cĕcĭnī	cantum	*sing.*
13.	Pang-ō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpĭgī	pactum	*fasten.*
14.	Tang-ō	-ĕrĕ	tĕtĭgī	tactum	*touch.*
15.	Caed-ō	-ĕrĕ	cĕcīdī	caesum	*cut, beat, kill.*
16.	Pell-ō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpŭlī	pulsum	*drive.*
17.	Toll-ō	-ĕrĕ	sustŭlī	sublātum	*take up.*
18.	Compounds of dō :				
	Abd-ō	-ĕrĕ	abdĭdī	abdĭtum	*hide.*
	Add-ō	-ĕrĕ	addĭdī	addĭtum	*add.*
	Condō	-ĕrĕ	condĭdī	condĭtum	*found, hide.*
	Crēdō	-ĕrĕ	crēdĭdī	crēdĭtum	*believe.*
	Dēdō	-ĕrĕ	dēdĭdī	dēdĭtum	*give up.*
	Ēdō	-ĕrĕ	ēdĭdī	ēdĭtum	*give forth, utter.*
	Perdō	-ĕrĕ	perdĭdī	perdĭtum	*lose.*
	Prōdō	-ĕrĕ	prōdĭdī	prōdĭtum	*betray.*
	Reddō	-ĕrĕ	reddĭdī	reddĭtum	*restore.*
	Subdō	-ĕrĕ	subdĭdī	subdĭtum	*substitute.*
	Trādō	-ĕrĕ	trādĭdī	trādĭtum	*deliver.*
	Vendō	-ĕrĕ	vendĭdī	vendĭtum	*sell.*
19.	Reduplicated from stō :				
	Sistō	-ĕrĕ	-stĭtī	-stātum	*stand* or *make to stand.*

-ī with lengthened Stem-vowel, -tum (*three* -sum).

(10)	1.	Făcĭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	fēcī	factum	*make.*
	2.	Jăcĭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	jēcī	jactum	*throw.*
	3.	Linquō	-ĕrĕ	līquī	-lictum	*leave.*
	4.	Vincō	-ĕrĕ	vīcī	victum	*conquer.*
	5.	Ăg-ō	-ĕrĕ	ēgī	actum	*do.*
	6.	Frang-ō	-ĕrĕ	frēgī	fractum	*break.*
	7.	Lĕg-ō	-ĕrĕ	lēgī	lectum	*choose, read.*
	8.	Ēd-ō	-ĕrĕ	edī	ēsum	*eat.*
	9.	Fŏdĭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	fōdī	fossum	*dig.*
	10.	Fund-ō	-ĕrĕ	fūdī	fūsum	*pour.*
	11.	Căpĭ-ō	-ĕrĕ	cēpī	captum	*take.*
	12.	Rumpō	-ĕrĕ	rūpī	ruptum	*break.*
	13.	Ēmō	-ĕrĕ	ēmī	emptum	*buy, take.*

-ī, -sum.

(11)	1.	Find-ō	-ĕrĕ	fīdī	fissum	*cleave.*
	2.	Scind-ō	-ĕrĕ	scĭdī	scissum	*tear.*

-ī, -sum (one -tum).

(12)	1.	-cand-ō	-ĕrĕ	-cendī	-censum	*set on fire.*
	2.	-fend-ō	-ĕrĕ	-fendī	-fensum	*strike.*
	3.	Pand-ō	-ĕrĕ	pandī	pansum	*spread.*
	4.	Prĕhend-ō	-ĕrĕ	prĕhendī	prĕhensum	*grasp.*
	5.	Scand-ō	-ĕrĕ	scandī	scansum	*climb.*
	6.	Vert-ō	-ĕrĕ	vertī	versum	*turn.*
	7.	Bĭb-ō	-ĕrĕ	bĭbī	bĭbĭtum	*drink.*
	8.	Vell-ō	-ĕrĕ	vellī, vulsī	vulsum	*rend.*

B. U-verbs: -ī, -tum.

	Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
(13)	1. Acŭō	-ĕrĕ	ăcŭī	ăcūtum	*sharpen.*
	2. Argŭō	-ĕrĕ	argŭī	argūtum	*prove.*
	3. Exŭō	-ĕrĕ	exŭī	exūtum	*put off.*
	4. Imbŭō	-ĕrĕ	imbŭī	imbūtum	*tinge.*
	5. Indŭō	-ĕrĕ	indŭī	indūtum	*put on.*
	6. Lŭō	-ĕrĕ	lŭī	lŭĭtum	*wash, atone.*
	7. Mĕtŭō	-ĕrĕ	mĕtŭī	—	*fear.*
	8. Mĭnŭō	-ĕrĕ	mĭnŭī	mĭnūtum	*lessen.*
	9. Nŭō	-ĕrĕ	nŭī	—	*nod.*
	10. Rŭō	-ĕrĕ	rŭī	rŭĭtum	*rush, fall.*
	11. Stătŭō	-ĕrĕ	stătŭī	stătūtum	*set up.*
	12. Trĭbŭō	-ĕrĕ	trĭbŭī	trĭbūtum	*assign.*
	13. Solvō	-ĕrĕ	solvī	sŏlūtum	*loosen.*
	14. Volvō	-ĕrĕ	volvī	vŏlūtum	*roll.*

IV. Fourth Conjugation (Character I: Audī- rĕ).

Usual Form :	-īō	-īrĕ	-īvī	-ītum
	Audĭō	-īrĕ	audīvī	audītum.

Exceptions.

-ŭī *or* īvī, -tum.

(1)	1. Ăpĕrĭō	-īrĕ	ăpĕrŭī	ăpertum	*open.*
	2. Sălĭō	-īrĕ	sălŭī	(-sultum)	*leap.*
	3. Sĕpĕlĭō	-īrĕ	sĕpĕlīvī	sĕpultum	*bury.*
	4. Ĕō	īrĕ	īvī *or* iī	ĭtum	*go.*

-sī, -tum (*one* -sum).

(2)	1. Fulcĭō	-īrĕ	fulsī	fultum	*prop.*
	2. Sancĭō	-īrĕ	sanxī	sanctum	*consecrate.*
	3. Vincĭō	-īrĕ	vinxī	vinctum	*bind.*
	4. Haurĭō	-īrĕ	hausī	haustum	*drain.*
	5. Sentĭō	-īrĕ	sensī	sensum	*feel.*

-ī, -tum.

(3)	1. Compĕrĭō	-īrĕ	compĕrī	compertum	*find.*
	2. Rĕpĕrĭō	-īrĕ	reppĕrī	rĕpertum	*discover.*
	3. Vĕnĭō	-īrĕ	vēnī	ventum	*come.*

V. DEPONENT VERBS.

(1) First Conjugation (Part. Perf. -ātŭs).

(2) Second Conjugation (Part. Perf. -ĭtŭs).

Exceptions.

	Present.	Infin.	Part. Perf.	
1.	Fătĕŏr	-ērī	fassŭs	*confess.*
2.	Mĭsĕrĕŏr	-ērī	mĭsertŭs *or* mĭsĕrĭtŭs	*have pity on.*
3.	Rĕŏr	-ērī	rătŭs	*think.*

(3) Third Conjugation (Part. Perf. -tŭs *or* -sŭs).

	Present.	Infin.	Part. Perf.	
(*a*) 1.	Fungŏr	-ī	functŭs	*perform.*
2.	Amplectŏr	-ī	amplexŭs	*embrace.*
3.	Nĭtŏr	-ī	nīsŭs *or* nixŭs	*strive.*
4.	Pătĭor	-ī	passŭs	*suffer.*
5.	Ūtŏr	-ī	ūsŭs	*use.*
6.	Grădĭŏr	-ī	gressŭs	*step.*
7.	Lābŏr	-ī	lapsŭs	*glide.*
8.	Mŏrĭŏr	-ī	mortŭŭs	*die.*
9.	Quĕrŏr	-ī	questŭs	*complain.*
10.	Frŭŏr	-ī	frŭĭtŭs	*enjoy.*
11.	Lŏquŏr	-ī	lŏcūtŭs	*speak.*
12.	Sĕquŏr	-ī	sĕcūtŭs	*follow.*
(*b*) 1.	Ăpiscŏr	-ī	aptŭs	*obtain.*
2.	Commĭniscŏr	-ī	commentŭs	*devise.*
3.	Expergiscŏr	-ī	experrectŭs	*wake up.*
4.	Fătiscŏr	-ī	fessŭs	*grow weary.*
5.	Īrascŏr	-ī	īrātŭs	*be angry.*
6.	Nanciscŏr	-ī	nactŭs	*obtain.*
7.	Nascŏr	-ī	nātŭs	*be born.*
8.	Oblīviscŏr	-ī	oblītŭs	*forget.*
9.	Păciscŏr	-ī	pactŭs	*bargain.*
10.	Prŏfĭciscŏr	-ī	prŏfectŭs	*set out.*
11.	Ulciscŏr	-ī	ultŭs	*avenge.*

(4) Fourth Conjugation (Part. Perf. -ītŭs).

Exceptions.

1.	Assentĭŏr	-īrī	assensŭs	*agree to.*
2.	Expĕrĭŏr	-īrī	expertŭs	*try.*
3.	Mētĭŏr	-īrī	mensŭs	*measure.*
4.	Oppĕrĭŏr	-īrī	oppertŭs	*wait for.*
5.	Ordĭŏr	-īrī	orsŭs	*begin.*
6.	Ŏrĭŏr	-īrī	ortŭs	*rise.*

Note. Inceptive Verbs form the Perfect and Supine as their Primitives: as, ingĕmiscō (from gĕmō), ingĕmŭī, ingĕmĭtum. Many Verbs are without Perfect; more still without Supine.

PARTICLES.

A. ADVERBS.

§ 82. I. Adverbs of Place answer the questions:—

(1) Ŭbĭ, *where?*
(2) Quō, *whither?*
(3) Quorsum, *whitherward?*
(4) Undĕ, *whence?*
(5) Quā, *which way?*
(6) Quātĕnŭs, quŏusquĕ, *how far?*

II. Adverbs of Time answer the questions:

(1) Quandō, ŭbĭ, *when?* (2) Quamdĭū, *how long?*

III. Adverbs of Number answer the question Quŏtĭēs, *how often?*

IV. Adverbs of Description express Manner, Quality, Quantity, etc.

Many are derived from Adjectives, and end in ē, tĕr; as, pulchrē, *finely*; mĭsĕrē, *wretchedly*; fortĭtĕr, *bravely*; săpĭentĕr, *wisely*.

Note. Adverbs of Negation are nōn, haud, *not*.

B. PREPOSITIONS.

§ 83. The following Prepositions take the Accusative Case.

Ad, *to, at*, &c.
Adversŭs, Adversum } *toward, against.*
Antĕ, *before.*
Apŭd, *at, in, among.*
Circum, *around.*
Circā, circĭtĕr, *about.*
Cĭs, cĭtrā, *on the near side of.*
Contrā, *against, over against.*
Ergā, *towards.*
Extrā, *outside of, out of.*
Infrā, *below.*
Intĕr, *between, among, amidst.*
Intrā, *within.*
Juxtā, *adjoining to, beside.*
Ŏb, *over against, by reason of.*
Pĕnĕs, *in the power of.*
Pĕr, *through.*
Pōnĕ, *behind.*
Post, *after, behind.*
Praetĕr, *beside.*
Prŏpĕ, *near*, prŏpĭŭs, proxĭmē.
Propter, *nigh, on account of.*
Sĕcundum, *next, along, according to.*
Sŭprā, *above.*
Trans, *across.*
Ultrā, *beyond.*
Versŭs, Versum, *towards.*

The following take the Ablative Case.

A, ăb, abs, *by, from.*
Absquĕ (rare), *without.*
Clam, *without the knowledge of.*
Cōram, *in the presence of.*
Cum, *with.*
Dē, *down from, from, concerning.*
Ex, ē, *out of, from.*
Pălam, *in sight of.*
Prae, *before, owing to, compared with.*
Prō, *before, for, instead of.*
Sĭnĕ, *without.*
Tĕnŭs, *reaching to, as far as.*

Note. Cum is attached to the Personal, Reflexive, and Relative Pronouns; as, mēcum, nōbiscum, tēcum, vōbiscum, sēcum, quōcum, or quīcum, quibuscum.

The following take the Accusative or the Ablative.

Ĭn, *into, against* (Acc.), *in, upon, among* (Abl.). Sŭpĕr, *over, upon.*
Sŭb, *up to, under* (Acc.), *under* (Abl.). Subtĕr, *under.*

Ĭn and sŭb with Accusative imply motion; with Ablative, rest.

II. The Prepositions and Particles compounded with Verbs are:—

A. Prepositions:—ā, ăb, abs, ăd, antĕ, circum, con (for cum), dē, ex, ē, ĭn, intĕr, ŏb, pĕr, post, prae, praetĕr, prō, sŭb, subtĕr, sŭper, trans.

B. Inseparable Particles:—ambĭ- (amb-), *around, about*; dis-, dī-, *in different parts or ways*; rĕ-, *back, again*; sē-, *apart.*

Note 1. Prepositions in composition suffer various changes; such as, combĭbō for conbĭbō, offendō for obfendō, trādūcō for transdūcō.

Note 2. Many Verbs in Composition suffer vowel-change: (1) *a* into *e*, as spargō, dispergō; (2) *a* into *u*, as quătĭō, concŭtĭō; (3) *a* into *i*, as, ăgō, exĭgō; (4) *e* into *i*, as rĕgō, dīrĭgō; (5) *ae* into ī, as, quaerō, acquīrō. Add to these, claudō, exclūdō, &c.; plaudō, supplōdō, &c.; and audĭō, ŏbēdĭō.

C. CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 84. Conjunctions are—

1. Coordinative, or those which join words and sentences but do not affect Mood: as, ĕt, quĕ, ac, atquĕ (*and*), aut, vĕl, vĕ (*either, or*), sĕd, autem (*but*), nam, ĕnim (*for*), &c.
2. Subordinative, or those which join sentences, influencing Mood: as, ŭt (*that*), nē (*lest*), quŏd, quĭă (*because*), quum (*when, since*), sī (*if*), nĭsĭ (*unless*), &c., &c.

§ 85. The Interrogative Particles cannot be rendered in English without the Verbs, to which they impart an Interrogative force:—

They are, the enclitic -nĕ, ăn, num, ŭtrum (*whether*): the compounds of the last three with -nĕ; namely, annĕ, numnĕ, ŭtrumnĕ: and the compounds of ăn, -nĕ, with the negative; namely, annōn, nonnĕ.

D. INTERJECTIONS.

§ 86. An Interjection is an exclamatory word, used either to draw attention, or to express feeling of some kind. The most usual Interjections are—

Ō, *O! oh!*
Ā *or* āh, *alas!*
Ēheu, Heu, hei, } *alas!*
Prō *or* prōh, *forbid it!*
Vae, *woe!*
Ēn, Eccĕ, } *lo! behold!*

Note. Of these, O, ā, ēheu, heu, prō, may be used with a Vocative Case: the same, as well as ēn, eccĕ, with a Nominative or Accusative: hei, vae, with a Dative.

SYNTAX.

PREFATORY EXCURSION.

§ 87. *A.* A Simple Sentence is the expression of a single thought:

Psittăcŭs lŏquĭtŭr,	Psittăcŭs nōn lŏquĭtŭr,
The parrot speaks.	*The parrot does not speak.*

B. That of which something is said, is called the Subject: as, Psittăcŭs, *the parrot.*

a. The Subject must be a Substantive, or a Noun-term which can take its place, as an Adjective, Pronoun, Infinitive, or Clause.

C. The Finite Verb, which declares what is said of the Subject, and makes a complete sense, is called the Predicate: as, Lŏquĭtŭr, *speaks.*

a. Since Pronoun Subjects are implied in the Endings (§ 44 *Obs.*), a single Verb may be a sentence:

Vēnī,	Vīdī,	Vīcī,
I came,	*I saw,*	*I conquered.*

D. Any Finite part of the Verb sum (essĕ), *to be,* is usually a Cōpŭlă, or *Link*; and a word linked by it to the Subject, and completing the sense, is called the Complement; both together forming the Predicate:

	Predicate.	
Subject.	Copula.	Complement.
Hŏmŏ	est	mortālĭs,
Man	*is*	*mortal.*
Hŏmĭnēs	sunt	ănĭmālĭă,
Men	*are*	*animals.*

Note. The Copula is often omitted: as, Rārī bŏnī, (*good men are few*).

a. Other Verbs besides sum link a Subject and Complement, and are called Copulative Verbs: as, fīō, *become*; nascŏr, *am born*; vĭdĕŏr, *seem*; dīcŏr, *am said*; vŏcŏr, *am called*; pŭtŏr, *am thought*, &c.

E. An Adjective agreeing with any Noun-term is said to be in Attribution, and may be (1) Epithet; (2) Attributive Complement.

(1) Doctī vĭrī,	(2) Hī vĭrī sunt doctī,
Learned men.	*These men are learned.*

2. A Substantive agreeing with any Noun-term is said to be in Apposition, and may be (1) Epithetic; (2) Appositive Complement.

(1) Rex Croesŭs,	(2) Croesŭs fŭĭt rex,
King Croesus.	*Croesus was king.*

SYNTAXIS MEMORIALIS PRIMA.

DE CONGRUENTIA.

Regulae Quattuor Generales.

§ 88. I. Verbum Fīnītum cum Nōmĭnātīvō Subjectī congrŭĭt nŭmĕrō ĕt persōnā:

Măgistĕr *dŏcĕt.* | Tū *dŏcēs*: nōs *discĭmŭs.*
Lĭbrī *lĕguntŭr.* | Discĕrĕ *est* ūtĭlĕ.

§ 89. II. Adjectīvum gĕnĕrĕ, nŭmĕrō, ĕt cāsū congrŭĭt cum ĕō cui attrĭbŭĭtŭr:

Vĭr *bŏnŭs illĕ bŏnam hanc* uxōrem hăbĕt.
Hĭrundō pullīs *sŭīs orbātă* quĕrĭtŭr.
Cārī sunt părentēs; *cāră* est pătrĭă.
Pŭĕrī discendō fīunt *doctī.*

§ 90. III. Substantīvum cāsū congrŭĭt cum ĕō cui appōnĭtŭr:

Nōs *pŭĕrī pătrem* Lollĭum ĭmĭtābĭmŭr.
Effŏdĭuntŭr ŏpēs, *irrītāmentă* mălōrum.
Spēs est *exspectātĭō* bŏnī.
Syllăbă longă brĕvī subjectă vŏcātŭr *Ĭambus.*

§ 91. IV. Rĕlātīvum cum Antĕcēdentĕ congrŭĭt gĕnĕrĕ, nŭmĕrō, ĕt persōnā; sĕd cāsū spectăt sŭam clausŭlam:

Dĕum vĕnĕrāmŭr *quī* nōs crĕāvĭt.
Ămīcŭs est, *quem* ămāmŭs, ā *quō* ămāmŭr.
Amō tē, mātĕr, *quae* mē ămās.

De Subjecto Composito.

§ 92. Cum Subjectō Compŏsĭtō plūrālĭă congrŭunt:

Vĕnēnō *absumptī sunt* Hannĭbăl ĕt Phĭlŏpoemēn.

1. Ĭn dīversĭtātĕ persōnārum Verbă congrŭunt cum Prĭōrĕ Persōnā:

Sī tū ĕt Tullĭă *vălētĭs,* ĕgŏ ĕt Cĭcĕrō *vălēmŭs.*

2. In dīversītātĕ gĕnĕrum Adjectīvă congrŭunt cum Mascŭlō pŏtĭŭs quam cum Fēmĭnīnō:

Pătĕr mĭhĭ ĕt mātĕr *mortŭī* sunt.

a. Rēbŭs ĭnănĭmīs attrĭbŭĭtŭr saepĕ gĕnŭs Neutrum:

Dīvĭtĭae, dĕcŭs, glōrĭă ĭn ŏcŭlīs *sĭtă* sunt.

DE CASIBUS.

De Casibus Subjecti et Complementi. § 87.

§ 93. (1) Fīnītī Verbī Subjectum Nōmĭnātīvŭs est:

Annī fŭgĭunt.

(2) Fīnītī Verbī Complēmentum plērumquĕ Nōmĭnātīvŭs est:

Vītă est *somnĭum.* | Nēmŏ nascĭtŭr *săpĭens.*

§ 94. (1) Infīnītīvī Subjectum ĭn Accūsātīvō pōnĭtŭr:

Constăt *annōs* fŭgĕrĕ. | Scīmŭs *annōs* fŭgĕrĕ.

(2) Infīnītīvī Complēmentum plērumquĕ ĭn Accūsātīvō pōnĭtŭr:

Aiunt vītam essĕ *somnĭum.*
Constăt nēmĭnem nascī *săpĭentem.*

a. Accūsātīvī cum Infīnītīvō constructĭō vŏcātŭr Ēnuncĭātĭō Oblīquă.

DE ACCUSATIVO.

§ 95. Accūsātīvŭs est Cāsŭs Prŏpĭōrĭs Objectī. Necnōn līmĭtandī vim hăbĕt.

I. Accusativus Objecti.

§ 96. Verbă Transĭtīvă rĕgunt Accūsātīvum Objectī:

Mātĕr ălit *pullōs.* | In prīmīs vĕnĕrārĕ *Dĕum.*

§ 97. Intransĭtīvă căpĭunt Accūsātīvum vī cognātă:

Dūram servĭt *servĭtūtem.*
Claudĭŭs *ālĕam* lūsĭt.

§ 98. Verbă quaedam, *rŏgandī* praesertim ĕt *dŏcendī*, bīnōs admittunt Accūsātīvōs, hunc Rĕī, illum Persōnae:

Nunquam *dīvĭtĭās dĕōs* rŏgāvī.
Quĭd nunc *tē littĕrās* dŏcĕam?

§ 99. Verbă Factĭtīvă, scilicet *făcĭendī*, *vŏcandī*, *pŭtandī*, sĭmĭlĭă, bīnōs hăbent Accūsātīvōs, hunc Objectī, illum Complēmentī:

Tē făcĭmus, Fortūnă, *dĕam*.
Rōmŭlŭs *urbem* sŭam *Rōmam* vŏcāvĭt.

II. Accusativus Limitationis.

§ 100. Accūsātīvŭs Respectūs adjungĭtŭr Verbīs ĕt Adjectīvīs, praesertim ăpŭd pŏētās:

Trĕmĭt *artūs*. | Nūdae sunt *lăcertōs*.

§ 101. Lŏcŭs, *Quō* ītŭr, ĭn Accūsātīvō pōnĭtŭr, idquĕ sĭnĕ Praepŏsĭtĭōnĕ, sī vĕl oppĭdī nōmĕn est, vĕl *dŏmŭs*, *rūs*:

Rēgŭlŭs *Carthāgĭnem* rĕdĭĭt.
Vōs ītĕ *dŏmum*: ĕgŏ *rūs* ībō.

§ 102. (1) Dūrātĭō Tempŏrĭs ĭn Accūsātīvō pōnĭtŭr:

Pĕrĭclēs *quădrāgintā annōs* praefŭĭt Ăthēnīs.

(2) Mensūră Spătĭī ĭn Accūsātīvō pōnĭtŭr:

Ĕrant mūrī Băbўlōnĭs *dŭcēnōs pĕdēs* altī.

§ 103. Accūsātīvum rĕgunt multae Praepŏsĭtĭōnēs: § 83.

Antĕ, *ăpŭd*, *ăd*, *adversŭs*,
Circum, *circā*, *cĭtrā*, *cĭs*,
Contrā, *intĕr*, *ergā*, *extrā*,
Infrā, *intrā*, *juxtā*, *ŏb*,
Pĕnĕs, *pōnĕ*, *post*, ĕt *praetĕr*,
Prŏpĕ, *proptĕr*, *pĕr*, *sĕcundum*,
Sŭprā, *versŭs*, *ultrā*, *trans*;
Hīs *sŭpĕr*, *subtĕr*, addĭtō,
Ĕt *ĭn*, *sŭb*, sī fĭt mōtĭō.

DE DATIVO.

§ 104. Dătīvŭs est Cāsŭs Rĕcĭpĭentĭs seu Rĕmōtĭōrĭs Objectī.

§ 105. Trājectīvă, quae sensum trājĭcĭunt ăd Rĕmōtĭŭs Objectum, sunt multă Adjectīvă, Adverbĭă, ĕt Verbă, rārĭŭs Substantīvă, quĭbŭs indĭcātŭr

Prŏpinquĭtās ĕt *Dēmonstrātĭō*,
Grātĭfĭcātĭō, *Dŏmĭnātĭō*,
Et hīs contrārĭă quaequĕ nōtĭō.

§ 106. I. Trājectīvă căpĭunt Dătīvum, quum signĭfĭcantŭr:

(1) Prŏpinquĭtās ĕt contrārĭă:

Est fīnĭtĭmŭs *ōrātōrī* pŏētă.
Nīl fŭĭt unquam sīc impār *sĭbĭ*.
Congrŭentĕr *nātūrae* vīvendum est.
Praesentĭă confĕr *praetĕrĭtīs*.
Nec tămĕn ignōrat quid distent aeră *lŭpīnīs*.

(2) Dēmonstrātĭō ĕt contrārĭă:

Dīc *mĭhĭ*, Dāmoetā, cūjum pĕcŭs?
Anguĭs *Sullae* appārŭĭt immŏlantī.
Haud *cuiquam* ĭn dŭbĭō ĕrăt bellum immĭnērĕ.

(3) Grātĭfĭcātĭō ĕt contrārĭă:

Pătrĭae sĭt ĭdōnĕŭs, ūtĭlĭs *āgrīs*.
Turbă grăvis *pācī* plăcĭdaeque ĭnĭmĭcă *quĭētī*.
Quŏd *ălĭī* dōnăt *sĭbĭ* dētrăhĭt.
Lūcem reddĕ tŭae, dux bŏnĕ, *pātrĭae*.
Nōbīs spondet fortūnă sălūtem.
Nē lĭbĕăt *tĭbĭ* quod *nēmĭnī* lĭcĕt.
Parcĕ pĭō *gĕnĕrī*.
Succensērĕ nĕfās *pătrĭae*.
Rĕsistendum est *appĕtītĭbŭs*.

(4) Dŏmĭnātĭō ĕt contrārĭă:

Săpĭens, *sĭbĭ* qui impĕrĭōsus.
Omnĭbŭs supplex est.
Impĕrăt aut servit collectă pĕcūnĭă *cuique*.
Mundŭs *Dĕō* pārĕt, et *huic* ŏbēdĭunt mărĭă terraequĕ.

§ *a*. Intĕr Trājectīvă sunt multă Verbă compŏsĭtă cum Partĭcŭlīs, quālēs sunt

Bĕnĕ, *mălĕ*, *sătĭs*, *rĕ*,
Ăd, *antĕ*, *cŏn*, *ĭn*, *intĕr*, *dē*,
Ob, *sŭb*, *sŭpĕr*, *post*, ĕt *prae*:

Cētĕrīs sătisfăcĭō sempĕr, *mĭhĭ* nunquam.
Sĭcĭlĭă quondam *Ītălĭae* ădhaesĭt.
Gĭgantēs bellum *dīs* intŭlērunt.
Ănătum ōvă *gallīnīs* suppōnĭmŭs.

§ 107. II. Dătīvŭs Rĕcĭpĭentĭs ŭbĭvīs adjungī pŏtest cum nōtĭōnĕ quădam Commŏdī vĕl Incommŏdī:

Esto, ut nunc multī, dīves *tĭbĭ*, paupĕr *ămīcīs*.
Nŭmă virgĭnēs *Vestae* lēgĭt.
Vĕnŭs nupsĭt *Vulcānō*.
Phĭlŏsŏphĭae sempĕr văcō.

a. Hūc rĕfĕr Dătīvum Prōnōmĭnīs, quī vŏcātŭr ēthĭcŭs:

Quid *mĭhĭ* Celsŭs ăgit?

b. *Sum* cum compŏsĭtīs, praetĕr *possum*, căpĭt Dătīvum:

Sum *tĭbĭ* Mercŭrĭus.
Vir *mĭhĭ* sempĕr ăbest.

c. *Est*, *sunt*, cum Dătīvō, *hăbērĕ* saepĕ signĭfĭcant:

Est *hŏmĭnī* cum Dĕō sĭmĭlĭtūdō.
Sunt *nōbīs* mītĭă pōma.

d. Adjungĭtŭr īdem Dătīvŭs Partĭcĭpĭīs ĕt Partĭcĭpĭālĭbŭs Passīvae Vōcĭs, praesertim Gĕrundīvīs:

Magnus cīvĭs ŏbīt et formīdātŭs *Ŏthōnī*.
Multīs illĕ *bŏnīs* flēbĭlĭs occĭdĭt.
Lĕgendae sunt *pŭĕrīs* Aesōpī fābŭlae.

§ 108. III. Dătīvŭs Rĕī prō Complēmentō pōnĭtŭr, adjunctō saepĕ Dătīvō Rĕcĭpĭentĭs:

Nĭmĭă fīdūcĭă *călămĭtātī* sōlĕt essĕ.
Exĭtĭo est ăvĭdum mărĕ *nautīs*.

§ 109. IV. Dătīvŭs Complēmentī pĕr Attractĭōnem pōnĭtŭr, praesertim ĭn nōmĭnandī formŭlīs:

Lĭcŭĭt Thĕmistŏclī essĕ *ōtĭōsō*.
Huic ĕgŏ dĭēī nōmĕn *Trĭnūmō* făcĭam.

DE ABLATIVO.

§ 110. Ablātīvŭs est Cāsŭs rērum quae circumstant ĕt adverbĭālī mōrĕ līmĭtant actĭōnem. Dēfīnĭt ĕtĭam Tempŭs ĕt Lŏcum.

§ 111. I. Ablātīvŭs Causae:

Ōdērunt peccārĕ bŏnī virtūtĭs *ămōre*.
Cocptīs immānĭbŭs effĕră Dīdō.

§ 112. II. Ablātīvŭs Instrūmentī:

Hī *jăcŭlīs*, illī certant dēfendĕrĕ *saxīs*.

§ 113. III. Ablātīvŭs Mŏdī:

Injūrĭă fĭt *dŭōbŭs mŏdīs*, aut *vī* aut *fraudĕ*.

§ 114. IV. Ablātīvŭs Condĭtĭōnĭs:

Pācĕ tŭā cum Thāĭdĕ collŏquăr.
Hŏmŏ *mĕā sententĭā* prūdentissĭmŭs est.

§ 115. V. Ablātīvŭs Quālĭtātĭs, cum Epithĕtō:

Quā făcĭē fŭĭt, cui dĕdistī symbŏlum?
Sĕnex *prōmissā barbā, horrentī căpillō.*

§ 116. VI. Ablātīvŭs Rēspectūs:

Angŏr *ănĭmō.*
Enniŭs *ingĕnĭō* maxĭmŭs, *artĕ* rŭdis.

§ 117. VII. Ablātīvŭs Prĕtĭī:

Ĕgŏ spem *prĕtĭō* nōn ĕmō.
Quŏd nōn ŏpŭs est, *assĕ* cārum est.

§ 118. VIII. Ablātīvŭs Mensūrae:

Longum *sesquĭpĕdĕ*, lātum *pĕdĕ* est.
Sōl *multīs partĭbŭs* mājŏr est quam lūnă.
Tantō pessĭmŭs omnĭum pŏētă,
Quantō tu optĭmŭs omnĭum pătrōnŭs.

§ 119. IX. Ablātīvŭs Mātĕrĭae:

Cībŭs ĕōrum *lactĕ, cāsĕō, carnĕ* constăt.

a. Ablātīvum rĕgunt: (1) Verbă *fungŏr, frŭŏr, ūtŏr, vescŏr, pŏtĭŏr, dignŏr*; (2) Adjectīvă *dignŭs, indignŭs, contentŭs, frētŭs, praedĭtŭs*; (3) Substantīvă *ŏpŭs, ūsŭs*:

(1) Fungar *vĭcĕ* cōtĭs.
Hannĭbăl, cum *victōrĭā* possĕt ūtī, frŭī mālŭĭt.
Rex impĭŭs *aurō* vī pŏtĭtur. § 133.

(2) Dignum *laudĕ* vĭrum Mūsă vĕtat mŏrī.

(3) Ŭbĭ rēs adsunt, quĭd ŏpŭs est *verbīs?*
Ūsŭs est fīlĭō *vīgintī mĭnīs.*

b. Ex Adjectīvīs ĕt Verbīs *ăbundandī* vĕl *ĕgendī, dītandī* vĕl *prīvandī*, plērăquĕ Ablātīvum căpĭunt, multă ĕtĭam Gĕnĭtīvum:

Ămŏr ĕt *mellĕ* ĕt *fellĕ* est fēcundissĭmŭs.
Nunquam ănĭmŭs *mōtū* văcŭŭs est.
Vīs *consĭlī* expers mōlĕ rŭit sŭā.
Mancĭpĭīs lŏcŭplēs ĕgĕt *aeris* Cappădŏcum rex.
Văcārĕ *culpā* maxĭmum est sōlātĭum.

§ 120. X. Ablātīvŭs Tempŏrĭs respondĕt, sī rŏgātŭr *Quandō? Intrā quantum tempŭs? Quantō tempŏrĕ antĕ* vĕl *post?*

Hĭĕmĕ omnĭă bellă conquĭescunt.
Quidquĭd est *bīdŭō* scĭēmŭs.
Hŏmērŭs *annīs multīs* fŭĭt antĕ Rōmŭlum.

§ 121. XI. *A.* Ablātīvŭs Lŏcī pōnĭtŭr sĭnĕ Praepŏsĭtĭōnĕ, cum rŏgātŭr, *Quā vĭā?*

Ībam fortĕ *Vĭā Sācrā.*

B. Ablātīvŭs saepĕ cărĕt Praepŏsĭtĭōnĕ, cum rŏgātŭr *Ŭbĭ?* maxĭmē, sī oppĭdī nōmĕn est, vĕl sī stăt cum Ĕpĭthĕtō:

Philippŭs *Nĕāpŏlī* est, Lentŭlŭs *Pŭtĕŏlīs.*
Tăbernae *tōtā urbĕ* clauduntŭr.

a. Oppĭdōrum nōmĭnă singŭlārĭă ex Dēclĭnātĭōnĕ prīmā ĕt sĕcundā lŏcum stătĭōnĭs dēfīnĭunt pĕr cāsūs ĭn *ae, ī*:

Quid *Rōmae* făcĭam? | Ĭs hăbĭtăt *Mīlētī.*

b. Sĭmĭlĭă sunt *hŭmī, dŏmī, bellī, mīlĭtĭae, rūrī*:

Caesărĭs virtūs *dŏmī mīlĭtĭaequĕ* cognĭtă est.

C. Ablātīvŭs oppĭdī Praepŏsĭtĭōnĕ cărĕt, cum rŏgātŭr *Undĕ?*

Dēmărātŭs fŭgĭt *Cŏrinthō.*

a. Ĭtă *dŏmō, rūrĕ.* (Dē Accūsātīvō Lŏcī *Quō* ītŭr, v. § 101.)

§ 122. XII. Ablātīvum rĕgunt vărĭae Praepŏsĭtĭōnēs:

A, ăb, absquĕ, cōram, dē,
Pălam, clam, cum, ex, et *ē,*
Sĭnĕ, tĕnŭs, prō, ĕt *prae*:

Hīs *sŭpĕr, subtĕr, sŭb* addēmŭs,
Ĕt *ĭn,* dē stătū sī dīcēmŭs.

a. Praepŏsĭtĭōnēs ĕtĭam compŏsĭtae rĕgunt Ablātīvum, praesertim *ăb, dē, ex*:

Quinctĭŭs *dictātūrā* sē abdĭcāvĭt.
Dētrūdunt nāvēs *scŏpŭlō.*

b. Ablātīvŭs Ăgentĭs expĕtĭt Praepŏsĭtĭōnem *ā, ăb*:

Laudātŭr ăb *hīs,* culpātŭr ăb *illīs.*

§ 123. XIII. Ablātīvŭs Sēpărātĭōnĭs ĕt Orīgĭnĭs ĕtĭam sĭnĕ Praepŏsĭtĭōnĕ Verbīs ĕt Partĭcĭpĭīs adjungĭtŭr:

Cēdēs cŏemptīs *saltĭbŭs* et *dŏmō.*
Pĕlŏpĕ nātŭs, *Tantălō* prognātŭs est.

§ 124. XIV. Ablātīvŭs Rĕī Compărātae:

(1) Prō *quam* cum Nōmĭnātīvō:

Nĭhĭl est ămābĭlĭŭs *virtūtĕ.*
Vīlĭŭs argentum est *aurō, virtūtĭbŭs* aurum.

(2) Prō *quam* cum Accūsātīvō:

Pŭtō mortem *dēdĕcŏrĕ* lĕvĭōrem.
Nēmĭnem *Lўcurgō* ūtĭlĭōrem Spartă gĕnŭĭt.

§ 125. XV. Substantīvum cum Partĭcĭpĭō cōălescĭt ĭn Ablātīvō, quī vŏcātŭr Absŏlūtŭs:

Rēgĭbŭs exactīs consŭlēs crĕātī sunt.

a. Prō Partĭcĭpĭō saepĕ supplētŭr altĕrum Substantīvum vĕl Adjectīvum:

Nīl despērandum Teucrō *dŭce* et *auspĭcĕ* Teucrō.
Nātŭs est Augustŭs *consŭlĭbŭs* Cĭcĕrōnĕ ĕt Antōnĭō.
Jamquĕ cĭnis, *vīvīs* frātrĭbŭs, Hectŏr ĕrat.
Quĭd dīcam, *hāc* jŭventūtĕ?

DE GENITIVO.

§ 126. Gĕnĭtīvŭs, Cāsŭs Possĭdentĭs, nōmĭnă plērumquĕ dēfĭnĭt vĕl subjectīvē vĕl objectīvē.

A. Genitivus Subjectivus.

§ 127. I. Gĕnĭtīvŭs Auctōrĭs ĕt Possessōrĭs.

Pŏlўclētī signă plānē perfectă sunt.
Singŭlōrum ŏpēs sunt dīvĭtĭae *cīvĭtātĭs.*
Omnĭă, quae *mŭlĭĕrĭs* fŭērunt, *vĭrī* fĭunt.
Ĕă stătŭă dīcēbātŭr essĕ *Mўrōnĭs.*

a. Interdum Gĕnĭtīvŭs pendĕt ā suppressā vōcĕ:

Hectŏrĭs Andrŏmăchē (supplē *uxŏr*).
Ventum ĕrăt ad *Vestae* (supplē *templum*).

b. Gĕnĭtīvŭs ĭtă stăt, ŭt supplērī possĭt

Indŏlēs, indĭcĭum,
Mūnŭs aut *offĭcĭum*:

Cūjusvīs *hŏmĭnĭs* est errārĕ.
Est *ădŏlescentĭs* mājōrēs nātū vĕrērī.
Tempŏrī cēdĕrĕ hăbētŭr *săpientĭs.*

§ 128. II. Gĕnĭtīvŭs Quālĭtātĭs, cum Ĕpĭthĕtō:

Ingĕnŭī vultŭs pŭĕr *ingĕnŭī*quĕ *pŭdōris.*
Claudĭŭs ĕrăt *somnī brĕvissĭmī.*

a. Nŏtentŭr elliptĭcī Gĕnĭtīvī, *parvī, mĭnōrĭs, mĭnĭmī, magnī, plūrĭs, plūrĭmī, tantī, quantī, maxĭmī,* quĭbŭs supplē *prĕtĭī*:

Vŏluptātem virtūs *mĭnĭmī* făcĭt.
Ēmĭt hortōs *tantī quantī* Pўthĭŭs vŏlŭit.

§ 129. III. *Intĕrest, rĕfert,* Gĕnĭtīvum admittunt:

Intĕrest *omnĭum* rectē făcĕrĕ.
Rĕfert *compŏsĭtĭōnĭs* quae quĭbŭs antēpōnās.

a. Ĕădem prō Gĕnĭtīvīs Prōnōmĭnum ūsurpant cāsūs Possessīvōs *mĕā, tŭā, sŭā, nostrā, vestrā, cūjā,* cum *rĕ* congrŭentēs:

Ĕt *tŭā* ĕt *mĕā* intĕrest tē vălērĕ.
Quĭd *nostrā* ĭd rĕfert?

§ 130. IV. A. Gĕnĭtīvŭs Rĕī Distrĭbūtae Partĭtīvīs adjungĭtŭr, quae, quantum lĭcĕt, Gĕnĭtīvī sūmunt gĕnŭs:

Ĕlĕphantō *bēlŭārum* est nullă prūdentĭŏr.
Hŏmĭnī ūnī *ănĭmantĭum* luctŭs est dătŭs.
Sullă centum vīgintī *sŭōrum* āmīsĭt.
Mājor *Nĕrōnum* mox grăvĕ praelĭum commīsĭt.
Gallōrum fortissĭmī sunt Belgae.
Nēmŏ *mortālĭum* omnĭbŭs hōrīs săpit.
*Pisc*ĭ*um* fēmĭnae mājōrēs sunt quam mărēs.
Sĕquĭmur tē, sanctĕ *dĕōrum*.
Hōc ăd tē mĭnĭmē *omnĭum* pertĭnĕt.

a. Nostrûm, vestrûm, Partĭtīvă sĕquuntŭr:

Tē vĕnīrĕ ŭterquĕ *nostrûm* cŭpĭt.

§ 131. B. Gĕnĭtīvŭs Rĕī Dēmensae Vŏcābŭlă Quantĭtātĭs ĕt Neutră Adjectīvă sĕquĭtŭr:

Să̆tĭs *ēlŏquentĭae, săpĭentĭae* părum est.
Ălĭquĭd pristĭnī *rōbŏrĭs* conservăt.
Quantum *nūmōrum*, tantum *fĭdēī* est.

B. Genitivus Objectivus.

§ 132. I. Gĕnĭtīvŭs objectīvē jungĭtŭr Substantīvīs, Adjectīvīs, aut Partĭcĭpĭīs, quĭbŭs transĭtīvă quaedam vīs est, praesertim sī signĭfĭcant

Pĕrītĭam, cūram, dēsīdĕrĭum,
Vĕl quidquĭd ĕrĭt hīs contrārĭum:

Insĭtŭs est mentī *cognĭtĭōnĭs* ămor.
Difficĭlĭs est cūră *rērum ălĭēnārum*.
Tempŭs ĕdax *rērum* est.
Corpŭs pătĭens *ĭnĕdĭae* fŭĭt.
Conscĭă mens *rectī* est.
Ĭmpĕrītŭs *mōrum* fŭĭt.
Ăvĭdă est *pĕrīcŭlī* virtūs.
Anĭmŭs fŭĭt *ălĭēnī* appĕtens, *sŭī* prŏfūsŭs.

a. Mĕī, tŭī, sŭī, nostrī, vestrī, objectīvē pōnuntŭr; subjectīvē, *mĕŭs, tŭŭs, sŭŭs, nostĕr, vestĕr*:

Nīcĭās *tŭă sŭī* mĕmŏrĭă dēlectātŭr.

(*a*) Gĕnĭtīvŭs Subjectīvŭs ĭn Possessīvō lătens Gĕnĭtīvum sĭbĭ congrŭentem rĕcĭpĭt:

Rĕspublĭcă *mĕă* ūnĭŭs ŏpĕră salvă ĕrăt.
Ăvēs fētŭs ădultōs *sŭae ipsōrum* fīdūcĭae permittunt.

§ 133. II. Gĕnĭtīvŭs adjungĭtŭr Verbīs ĕt Adjectīvīs, ā quĭbŭs signĭfĭcātŭr

Pŏtentĭă ĕt *impŏtentĭă*, *Damnātĭō*, *absŏlūtĭō*,
Crīmĭnātĭō, *innŏcentĭă*, *Mĕmŏrĭă* ĕt *oblīvĭō*:

(1) Rōmānī *signōrum* pŏtītī sunt. § 119 *a*.
Īră est impŏtens *sŭī*.
(2) Frāternī est *sanguĭnĭs* insons.
Rĕŭs est *injūrĭārum*.
(3) Pĕtillĭŭs *furtī* absŏlūtŭs est.
Condemnāmŭs hăruspĭcēs *stultĭtĭae*.
(4) Rēs adversae admŏnent nōs *rēlĭgiōnum*.
Omnēs imměmŏrem *bĕnĕfĭcĭī* ōdērunt.

a. Mĕmĭnī, *rĕmĭnĭscŏr*, *rĕcordŏr*, *oblīvĭscŏr*, Gĕnĭtīvum vĕl Accūsātīvum admittunt:

Jŭbet *mortis* tē mĕmĭnissĕ Dĕus.
Dulcēs mŏrĭens rĕmĭnĭscĭtŭr *Argos*.

§ 134. III. *Pĭgĕt*, *pŭdĕt*, *paenĭtĕt*, *taedĕt* atquĕ *mĭsĕrĕt*, Impersōnālĭă, Gĕnĭtīvum căpĭunt cum Accūsātīvō:

Mĭsĕrĕt *tē ălĭōrum*: *tŭī* nĕc mĭsĕrĕt nĕc pŭdĕt.
Ĕōs partim *scĕlĕrum*, partim *ĭneptĭārum* paenĭtĕt.

§ 135. IV. *Mĭsĕrĕŏr*, *mĭsĕrescō* Gĕnĭtīvum căpĭunt; *mĭsĕrŏr*, *commĭsĕrŏr*, Accūsātīvum:

Arcădĭī, quaesō, mĭsĕrescĭtĕ *rēgis*.
Sortem mĭsĕrātŭr ĭnīquam.

§ 136. V. Gĕnĭtīvŭs ā pŏētīs lībĕrē ūsurpātŭr. Sĕd *aegĕr ănĭmī*, *ănĭmī pendĕō*, sīmĭlĭă, ĕtĭam ĭn sŏlūtā ōrātĭōnĕ compārent.

DE CASIBUS EXTRA SENTENTIAM.

§ 137. Vŏcātīvŭs extrā sententĭam stăt vĕl sĭnĕ Interjectĭōnĕ vĕl cum Interjectĭōnĕ: § 86.

Ōrō tē, *fīlī* (vĕl *O fīlī*).

§ 138. Nōmĭnātīvŭs ĕt Accūsātīvŭs ĭn exclāmandō ūsurpantŭr vĕl sĭnĕ Interjectĭōnĕ vĕl cum Interjectĭōnĕ:

(1) *Infandum!* | Eccĕ *nŏvă turbă!*
(2) *Mē mĭsĕrum!* | Ēn *quattŭŏr ārās!*

§ 139. Ităque Dătīvŭs pōnĭtŭr cum *hei! vae!*:

Hei *mĭsĕrō mĭhĭ!* | Vae *victīs!*

DE VERBO INFINITO.

§ 140. I. Infīnītīvum stăt—

1. Substantīvē, prō Nōmĭnātīvō vĕl Accūsātīvō:

(1) *Invĭdērĕ* nōn cădět ĭn săpĭentem.
Dulce et děcōrum est prō pătrĭā *mŏrī.*
(2) *Mŏrī* nēmŏ săpĭens mīsĕrum dixĕrĭt.

2. Praedĭcātīvē, ĭn narrandō, prō Verbō Fīnītō:

Multī *sĕquī, fŭgĕrĕ, occīdī, căpī.*

3. Oblīquē, cum Accūsātīvō Subjectī. § 94.

4. Prōlātā constructĭōnĕ Verbī vĕl Adjectīvī:

Sŏlent dĭū *cōgĭtārĕ* quī magnă vŏlunt *gĕrĕrĕ.*
Pătrĭae dīcĕrĭs *essĕ* păter.
Lūdum insŏlentem *lūdĕrĕ* pertĭnax.

§ 141. II. Infīnītīvī Cāsūs sunt Gĕrundĭă ĕt Sŭpīnă.

1. Accūsātīvŭs Gĕrundĭī Praepŏsĭtĭōnĭbŭs adjungĭtŭr:

Ad bĕnĕ *vīvendum* brĕvĕ tempŭs sătĭs est.

2. Gĕnĭtīvŭs Gĕrundĭī Substantīvīs ĕt Adjectīvīs addĭtŭr:

Ars *scrĭbendī* discĭtŭr. | Cŭpĭdŭs *audĭendī* est.

3. Dătīvŭs Gĕrundĭī Nōmĭnĭbŭs et Verbīs addĭtŭr:

Păr est *dissĕrendō.* | Dăt ŏpĕram *lĕgendō.*

4. Ablātīvŭs Gĕrundĭī causae vĕl mŏdī est aut Praepŏsĭtĭōnī junctŭs:

Fŭgĭendō vincĭmŭs. | *Dē pugnandō* dēlĭbĕrant.

5. Sŭpīnum ĭn *um* Accūsātīvŭs est post Verbă mōtūs:

Lūsum it Maecēnās, *dormītum* ĕgŏ.

a. *Īrī* cum Sŭpīnō effĭcĭt Infīnītīvum Fŭtūrī Passīvī:

Audĭĕrăt nōn *dătum īrī* fīlĭo uxōrem sŭō.

6. Sŭpīnum ĭn *ū* prō Ablātīvō Respectūs est:

Foedum *dictū* est. | Nĕfās *vīsū* est.

§ 142. III. Infīnītīvum, cum Gĕrundĭō, Partĭcĭpĭīs, ĕt Sŭpīnō ĭn *um*, ĕōsdem cāsūs rĕgĭt āc Verbum Fīnītum:

Cŭpĭō sătisfăcĕrĕ *rēīpublĭcae.*
Cŭpĭdŭs sum sătisfăcĭendī *rēīpublĭcae.*
Ausi omnēs immānĕ *nĕfās ausōquĕ* pōtītī.
Ast ĕgŏ nōn Graiīs servītum *mātrĭbŭs* ībō.

§ 143. In Gĕrundĭis Transĭtīvīs ūsĭtātĭŏr est Attractĭō Gĕrundīvă; cūjŭs constructĭōnĭs rēgŭlă est haeccĕ:

Trăhĭtŭr Objectum ĭn Gĕrundĭī cāsum, Gĕrundĭum ĭn nŭmĕrum ĕt gĕnŭs Objectī:

Brūtŭs ĭn *lĭbĕrandă pătrĭă* est interfectŭs.
Hī septemvĭrī fŭērunt *ăgrīs dīvĭdendīs*.

§ 144. IV. 1. Nĕcessĭtātem signĭfĭcăt Gĕrundīvă constructĭō impersōnālĭs, ĭn Verbīs pŏtissĭmum intransĭtīvĭs:

Bĭbendum est. | *Ĕundum ĕrĭt.*

a. Huic addī pŏtest Dătīvŭs, rārĭŭs Ablātīvŭs cum *ā, ăb*:

Bĭbendum est *nōbīs.* | *Vōbīs* ĕundum ĕrĭt.

b. Ĕt sī quĭs ălĭŭs cāsŭs ā Verbō rĕgĭtŭr:

Cĭvĭbŭs est ā vōbīs consŭlendum.
Sŭō cuīquĕ *jūdĭcĭō* est ūtendum.
Eudoxŭs ŏpīnātŭr *Chaldaeīs* mĭnĭmē essĕ crēdendum.

2. Nĕcessĭtātem signĭfĭcăt attrĭbūtīvă constructĭō Gĕrundīvī, ĭn Verbīs transĭtīvīs:

Dĕŭs ĕt *dĭlĭgendŭs* est nōbīs ĕt *tĭmendŭs*.
Nōn tangendă rătēs transĭlĭunt vădă.

DE PRONOMINIBUS.

§ 145. *Sē, sŭŭs*, Rĕflexīvă Prōnōmĭnă, rĕfĕruntŭr ăd sententĭae princĭpālĭs Subjectum, mŏdŏ tertĭae persōnae sĭt:

Sentĭt ănĭmŭs *sē* vī *sŭā* mŏvērī.

a. Rĕflexīvă ăd Objectum rĕferrī possunt, sī ĕă rĕlātĭō nĭhĭl hăbĕt ambĭgŭī:

Spēcĭēnem impellĭt ostentātĭō *sŭī*.
Ăpĭbŭs fructum restĭtŭō *sŭum*.
Mors *sŭă* quemquĕ mănet.

DE PARTICULIS NONNULLIS.

§ 146. Multae Conjunctĭōnēs sĭmĭlĭă sĭmĭlĭbŭs annectunt:

Mīrātur portās strĕpĭtum*que et* strātă vīārum.
Virtūs *nĕc* ērĭpī *nĕc* surrĭpī pŏtest.
Nēmĭnem săpĭentĭōrem pŭtŏ *quam* Sōcrătem.
Omnĕ sŏlum fortī pătrĭa est, *ut* pisćĭbŭs aequor.

§ 147. *Nē* prŏhĭbĭtīvă cum Impĕrātīvō Mŏdō vĕl cum Conjunctīvō ūsurpātŭr: *nēdum*, *ŭtĭnam*, *Ō sī*, *ŭt* prō ŭtĭnam, cum Conjunctīvō:

Nē quă mēīs estō dictīs mŏră.
Nē culpam ĭn mē contŭlĕrĭs.
Neu dēsint ĕpŭlīs rōsae.
Mortālĭă factă pĕrībunt,
Nēdum sermōnum stĕt hŏnōs et grātĭă vīvax.
Ŭtĭnam mĭnŭs vītae cŭpĭdī fŭissēmŭs.
Ō si urnam argentī fors quae mĭhĭ monstrĕt.
Ŭt illum dī dĕaequĕ perdant.

COMPENDIUM REGULARUM DE SUBJUNCTIVO.

§ 148. Mŏdŭs Conjunctīvŭs vărĭīs sensĭbŭs *pūrē* ūsurpātŭr: quum *subjungĭtŭr* altĕrī Verbō, Subjunctīvŭs appellātŭr.

§ 149. Prōnōmĭnă ĕt Partĭcŭlae, quae oblīquē interrŏgant, Subjunctīvum postŭlant:

Ipsĕ quis *sĭt*, ŭtrum *sĭt*, an nōn *sĭt*, id quŏquĕ nescit.

Tālĭă sunt:

Quantŭs, ŭter, quālis, quis, quot, quŏtŭs, unde, ŭbĭ, quandō, Cūr, quŏtĭēs, quārē, quam, quōmŏdŏ, num, nĕ, ŭt, ăn, ŭtrum.

§ 150. Rĕlātīvum *quī*, cum Partĭcŭlīs sŭīs, *undĕ, ŭbĭ*, cētĕrīs, simplĭcī sensū căpĭt Indĭcātīvum: sī contĭnētŭr ĭn ĕō *quum, quamvīs, ŭt*, vĕl *tālĭs ŭt*, Subjunctīvum:

Mīsĕrĕt tŭī mē, quī hunc *făcĭas* ĭnĭmīcum tĭbī.
Littĕras mīsī quĭbŭs ĕt *plăcārem* eŭm ĕt *mŏnērem*.
Quĭs est quī nōn *ōdĕrĭt* prŏtervam pŭĕrĭtĭam?
Dignă rēs est ŭbĭ nervōs *intendās*.

§ 151. Rĕlātīvum vĕl Conjunctīō, sī sŭbordĭnātŭr ōrātĭōnī oblīquae vĕl rē vĕl pŏtestātĕ, Subjunctīvum postŭlăt:

Ennĭŭs nōn censĕt lūgendam essĕ mortem, quam immortālĭtās *consĕquātŭr*.
Sōcrătēs accūsātŭs est quŏd *corrumpĕrĕt* jŭventūtem.

a. Conjunctīvō saepĕ sŭbordĭnātŭr Subjunctīvŭs:

Clāmant omnēs: praestārĕt quŏd *rĕcēpissĕt*.

§ 152. Conjunctiōnum Mŏdōs rĕgentĭum Classēs sunt trēs.

I. Prīmă Classĭs est ĕārum, quārum prŏprĭŭs est Subjunctīvŭs:

(1) Consecutiva:
Ŭt (*so that*)

(2) Finales:
Ŭt (*in order that*)
Nē (*lest, that . . . not*)
Quō (*in order that*)
Quōmĭnŭs (*but that*)
Quīn (*but that*)

(3) Causalis:
Quum (*since*)

(4) Conditionales:
Dum, Mŏdŏ, Dummŏdŏ (*provided that*)

(5) Concessivae:
Lĭcĕt, Quamvīs, Ŭt (*although*)

(6) Comparativae:
Tanquam, Vĕlŭt, ceu, Quăsĭ, &c. (*as if*)

II. Altĕră Classĭs est ĕārum quārum prŏprĭŭs est Indĭcātīvŭs, nĭsĭ sŭbordĭnentŭr ōrātĭōnī oblīquae vĕl rē vĕl pŏtestātĕ:

(1) Causales:
Quŏd, quĭă (*because*)
Quŏnĭam (*since*)
Quandŏquĭdem (*since*)
Sīquĭdem (*inasmuch as*)

(2) Temporales:
Quandō, quum, ŭbĭ (*when*)
Ŭt (*when, since*)
Quŏtĭēs (*as often as*)
Sĭmŭl (*as soon as*)
Post-quam (*after that*)
Dum, Dōnĕc, Quŏăd (*whilst, as long as*)

(3) Concessivae:
Quamquam (*although, however*)
Ŭtŭt (*however*)

III. Tertĭă Classĭs est ĕārum, quās aut Indĭcātīvŭs sĕquĭtŭr aut Subjunctīvŭs, prŏŭt rēs aut vēră aut cōgĭtātă prōpōnĭtŭr.

(1) Temporales:
Dum, dōnĕc, quŏăd (*until*)
Antĕ-quam, Prĭus-quam (*before that*)

(2) Conditionales et Concessivae:
Sī (*if*)
Nĭsĭ (*unless*)
Etsī, ĕtĭamsī, (*although, even if*)

§ 153. Ĭdĭōtismī sunt Lătīnī sērmōnĭs:

(1) Quum (*when*) sĕquentĕ Subjunctīvō Imperfectī vĕl Plūperfectī:

Zēnōnem, quum Athēnīs *essem*, audīebam frĕquentĕr.
Dēcessīt Agēsĭlāŭs quum ĭn portum *vēnissĕt*.

(2) Dum (*whilst*) sĕquentĕ Indĭcātīvō Praesentĭs, ĕtĭam ĭn oblīquā sŭbordĭnātĭōnĕ ĕt dē rē praetĕrĭtā:

Quem ardōrem stŭdĭī censētĭs fŭissĕ ĭn Archĭmēdĕ, quī, *dum* ĭn pulvĕrĕ quaedam *dēscrībĭt* attentĭŭs, nē pătrĭam quĭdem captam essĕ sensĕrĭt?

§ 154. Conjunctĭō excĭdĭt ălĭquandō:

Phĭlŏsŏphĭae servĭās ŏportĕt (supplē *ŭt*).
Quaeram justum sit necnĕ pŏēma (supplē *ŭtrum*).
Partem ŏpĕre in tantō, sĭnĕret dŏlŏr, Īcăre, hăbērēs (supplē *sī*).

§ 155. Dē Consĕcūtĭōnĕ Tempŏrum ĕă est rēgŭlă, ŭt Prīmārĭă Prīmārĭīs sŭbordĭnentŭr, Histŏrĭcă Histŏrĭcīs.

Exemplă ex Syntaxī rĕpĕtantŭr.

Regulae Subsidiariae de Congruentia.

§ 156. (1) Adjectīvă prō Substantīvīs pōnuntŭr:

Multă paupĕrī dēsunt, *ăvārō omnĭă.*

(2) Infīnītīvă prō Substantīvīs pōnuntŭr:

Vīvĕrĕ est *vălērĕ.*

(3) Clausŭlae prō Substantīvīs pōnuntŭr:

Crēdĭbĭlĕ est *omnĭă consĭlĭō fĭĕrī.*

§ 157. Impersōnālĭs Verbī Nōmĭnātīvŭs nōn exstăt, nĭsĭ sī Infīnītīvum vĕl Clausŭlă est:

Pŭdĕt ĕum factī (i.e. *pŭdŏr* pŭdĕt).
Quĭd ăgĭtŭr? Stātŭr (i.e. *stătĭō* fĭt).
Taedĕt ĕădem *audīrĕ* millĭēs.
Magnī interest *ŭt tē vĭdĕam.*

§ 158. Vox intellĭgĭtŭr ŏmissă pĕr Ellipsĭn:

Nĭhĭl bŏnum nĭsĭ quŏd hŏnestum (bĭs intellĭgĕ *est*).
Perfundor gĕlĭdā (intellĭgĕ *ăquā*).

§ 159. Congrŭentĭă vărĭātŭr pĕr Attractĭōnem:

Nōn omnĭs errŏr stultĭtĭă est *dīcendă.*
Thēbae, *quod* Boeōtĭae căpŭt est.

§ 160. Congrŭentĭă cum sensū fĭt pĕr Sўnĕsĭn, praesertim ăpŭd pŏētās:

Sŭbĕunt Tĕgĕaeă jŭventūs . . . auxĭlĭō *tardī.*
Ubĭ est *ĭs* scĕlŭs, *quī* mē perdĭdĭt?

PROSODIAE COMPENDIUM.

§ 161. Dē Syllăbārum Quantĭtātĕ dissĕrit,
Et dē Mĕtrōrum lēgĭbus, Prŏsōdĭa.

DE SYLLABARUM QUANTITATE.

Regulae Quantitatis Generales.

§ 162. 1. Omnis Diphthongus contractăquĕ Syllăbă longa est.

2. Dant Dērīvātīs prŏprĭum Prīmārĭă tempus.

3. Praevĭă vōcālī vōcālis corrĭpĭētur.

4. Vōcālis fit longă sĭtū, cui consŏnă substat
Altĕră post ūnam; ut *trīstīs*: seu vŏcĕ ĭn ĕādem
J sŭbĭt, *x*, aut *z*; sīc *Ājāx*, *āxĭs*, *Āmāzōn*.

a. Vōcālis dŭbĭa est, quamvīs brĕvĭs ipsă sŭā vī,
Quam sĕquĭtur, lĭquĭdā subjunctā, consŏnă mūta:
Sīc rectē *lūgūbrĕ* mĕlos vel *lūgŭbrĕ* dīcēs.

b. *N* post *g* longam dat sempĕr: ŭt *āgnŭs* ĕt *īgnis*.
Nec mĭnŭs *m* post *g*; *tēgmen* quod monstrăt ĕt *āgmen*.

De Quantitate Syllabarum Finalium.

§ 163. 1. Plērăquĕ prōdūcēs Mŏnŏsyllăbă, quālĭă *mē*, *vēr*.

2. Prōdūcuntŭr ĭn *A*; *frustrā*, *contrā*quĕ, *părā*que.

a. Accūsātīvōs et cāsūs excĭpĕ Rectōs:
Carmĭnă Mūsă cănit; rĕsŏnant *Āmăryllĭdă* silvae.

3. *E* brĕvĭs in fīne est: sīc *lēgĕ*, *tĭmētĕ*, *cărērĕ*.

4. Prōdūcuntŭr ĭn *I*: *dīcī*, *plēbī*que, *dŏlī*que.

5. Prōdūcuntŭr ĭn *O*: *virgō*, *multō*quĕ, *juvō*que.

6. Prōdūcuntŭr ĭn *Ū*: sīc *tū*, *dictū*quĕ, *dŭ*que.

7. *Y* brĕvĭs in fīne est: sīc dant *chĕlў*, *Tīphў*, pŏētae.

8. In *C* prōdūcuntŭr, ŭt *illīc* (excĭpĕ *donĕc*).

9. Corrĭpĕ ĭn *L*, *D*, *T*: sīc *Hannĭbăl*, *illŭd*, *ămāvĭt*.

10. *N* brĕvĭs in fīne est: sunt testēs *Īlĭŏn*, *agmĕn*.

11. *R* brĕvĭs in fīne est: ceu *calcăr*, *ămābĭtŭr*, *Hectŏr*.

12. Prōdūcuntŭr ĭn *Ās*: ut *terrās* atquĕ *Mĕnalcās*.

13. Prōdūcuntŭr ĭn *Ēs*, ut *sēdēs* atquĕ *vĭdērēs*.

14. *Is* brĕvĭs in fīne est: ceu *dīcĕrĭs*, *ūtĭlĭs*, *ensĭs*.

a. Oblīquī cāsūs plūrālēs excĭpĭuntur,
Ut *terrīs*, *vobīs*; ĕtĭam persōnă sĕcunda
In prīmō nŭmĕrō Quartae Praesentĭs, ŭt *audīs*:
Compŏsĭta ā *vīs*, *sīs*: *mālīs*, *nolīs*quĕ, *vĕlīs*que.

15. Prōdūcuntŭr ĭn *Ōs*: ut *ventōs* atquĕ *săcerdōs*.

16. *Us* brĕvĭs in fīne est: testēs *ŏlŭs*, *intŭs*, *ămāmŭs*.

a. Hinc Quartae cāsūs contractōs excĭpe, ŭt *artūs*:
Et queis crescentis longa est pēnultĭmă cāsūs,
Ut *tellūs incūs*quĕ, *jŭventūs* atquĕ *sĕnectūs*.

17. *Ys* brĕvĭs in fīne est: testēs *chĕlўs*, *Ōthrўs*, *Ĕrīnўs*.

Obs. Mōs rĕgĭt Auctōrum tempus, sī rēgŭlă dēfit.

DE METRORUM LEGIBUS.

Definitiones.

§ 164. Syllăbă longă brĕvī subjectă vōcātŭr Ĭambus . . . ⏑ –
Quod sī longă brĕvī praecessĕrĭt, illĕ Trŏchēus . . – ⏑
Spondēus bīnīs fertur consistĕrĕ longīs . . . . . – –
Dactўlŭs effĭcĭtur longā brĕvībusquĕ dŭābus . . – ⏑ ⏑

De Scansione et Figuris Scansionis.

§ 165. 1. Scansĭŏ, | quam vărĭ|ā con|cinnant | artĕ Fĭ|gūrae,
Distrĭbŭ|it Ver|sum | prō rătĭ|ōnĕ Pĕ|dum.

2. A. Vōcālem ēlīdet Sўnăloepha in līmĭtĕ vōcis,
Sī Vōcālĭs ĕrit subnexae in līmĭnĕ vōcis;

'*Phyllĭd*' *ăm*' | *ant*' *ălĭ*|*ās*.
(prō *Phyllĭdă*, *ămō*, *antĕ*.)

3. B. Ecthlipsis Vōcālem atquĕ *m* dē līmĭtĕ trūdet,
Sī Vōcālĭs ĕrit subnexae in līmĭnĕ vōcis;
' *Ō cū*|*rās hŏmĭn*' | *Ō quant*' | *est in* | *rēbŭs ĭn*|*āne*.
(prō *hŏmĭnum*, *quantum*.)

a. Extrēma in dŭbĭīs censētur syllăbă versūs.

§ 166. Versus Memoriales de Vocum Differentia.

I. In sīlŭīs *ăcĕr* est: ĕquŭs *ācĕr* Ŏlympĭă vincit.
Vōcĕ *cănēs*; dūc ējă *cānēs*, nīsĭ tempŏră *cānēs*.
Clāvă fĕrit: *clāvus* firmat; *clāvis*que rĕclūdit.
Ut plăcĕās *cŏmĭtī*, mōrēs *cŏmĕs* indŭĕ *cōmēs*.
Cōmoedī scēnam, *cŏmĕdōnēs* quaerĭtĕ *cēnam*.
Consŭlĕ doctōrēs; sic tū *tĭbĭ consŭlĭs* ipsī.
Bellandī *cŭpĭdō* nŏcŭit sŭă saepĕ *cŭpīdō*.
Carmĭnă *dīcuntur*, Dŏmĭnō dum templă *dĭcantur*.
Solvĕrĕ *diffĭdit*, nōdum quī *diffĭdĭt* enŝe.
Uxōr*em dūcit* vir; *nūbit* sponsă mărītō.
Ēdŭcăt hic cătŭlōs, ut mox *ēdūcăt* ĭn āprōs.
Sī tĭbĭ non est *aes*, *ĕs* ĭnops, et pinguĭă nōn *ēs*.
Fallit saepĕ *frĕtum* plăcĭdō nĭmĭs aequŏrĕ *frētum*.
Sōl nūbēs *fŭgăt*, et *fūgĭt* irrĕpărābĭlĕ tempus.
Per quod quis peccat, pĕr *ĭdem* mox plectĭtŭr *īdem*.
Diffĭcĭlis *lăbŏr* est, cūjus sub pondĕrĕ *lābor*.
Frons pŭĕri est *lēvis*, *lĕvĭs* autem linguă pŭellae.
In campīs *lĕpŏrēs*, in lībrīs quaerĕ *lĕpōrēs*.
Nōn *lĭcĕt* assĕ *mĭlĭ*, quī *mĕ* nōn assĕ *lĭcētur*.
Mālo ĕgŏ *mālă* mĕā bŏnă quam *mălă* frangĕrĕ *mālā*.
Merx vēnit, *merces*quĕ *vĕnit* quaesītă lăbōre.
Mulcĕt ămans plăcĭdam, dum *mulget*, Silvĭă vaccam.
Fēcĕrĭs offĭcĭum, *mĭsĕrĭs* sī *mīsĕrĭs* aera.
Nītĕrĕ, parvĕ pŭer, cŭpĭēs quīcumquĕ *nĭtēre*.
Oblĭtă quae fūcō rŭbĕt, est *oblītă* dĕcōrī.
Occĭdĭt illĕ dŏlō turpī, quem *occīdĭt* ămīcus.
Ōs (*ōris*) *mandat*, sĕd *ŏs* (*ossis*) *mandĭtŭr ōre*.
Uxōris *părĕre* et *pārērĕ*, *părārĕ* mărīti est.
Pārentēs pŭĕrī făcĭunt gaudērĕ *părentēs*.
Lūdĕ *pĭlă*: *pīlum* torquētur: *pīlă* cŏlumna est.
Prō rēti et rĕgĭōnĕ *plăga* est; prō verbĕrĕ *plāga*.
Sunt cīvēs urbis *pŏpŭlus*; sed *pōpŭlŭs* arbor.
Prōră prĭor, *puppis* pars postĕra, ăt īmă *cărīna*.
Spondet *vas* (*vădĭs*), at *vās* (*vāsis*) contĭnĕt escam.
Vas căpŭt, at nummōs tantum *praes* praestăt ămīcē.
Sī cĭtŭs īrĕ *vĕlīs*, *vēlīs* ŏpŭs omnĭbŭs ūti est.

II. *Fīdĕ*, sĕd antĕ *vĭdē* : quī *fīdit*, nec bĕnĕ *vīdit*,
Fallĭtŭr : ipsĕ *vĭdē* nē căpĭārĕ *fĭdē*.
Consortēs fortūna ĕădem, *sŏcĭōs* lăbŏr īdem,
Ūnum *collēgās* effĭcĭt offĭcĭum :
At cārōs făcĭunt schŏlă, lūdus, mensă, *sŏdālēs* ;
Sulcŭs ăgrī *līra* est : dat *lўră* tactă mŏdōs.
Nē sit *sēcūrus*, quī nōn est *tūtŭs* ăb hoste ;
Ad flūmen *rīpās*, ad mărĕ *lītŭs* hăbēs.
Sunt aetātĕ *sĕnēs* ; *vĕtĕrēs* vixērĕ prĭōrēs :
Quod nōn est *sĭmŭlō dissĭmŭlō*quĕ quŏd est.
Annĕ *nŏvī* quĭd hăbēs ? Ălĭum pĕtĕ : nīl ĕgŏ *nōvī*.
Quod mĭnĭmē *rĕfert* garrŭlŭs illĕ *rĕfert*.
Sī quā fortĕ *sĕdēs*, atque est tĭbĭ commŏdă *sēdēs*,
Illā *sēdĕ sĕdē* ; nec mĭhĭ *cēdĕ* lŏcō.

(ENGLISH OF NOUNS, § 25—30.)

[§ 25.] (1) *Silver, gold, iron, plebeian-order, justice, spring, time, death, blood, childhood.* (2) *Ghosts, purse, household-gods, riches, cradle, trifles, thanks, arms, functions, huts, feast of Flora.*

[§ 26.] (5) *Artificer, worker, guest, seer, new-comer, witness, citizen, inhabitant, parent, priest* (or *priestess*), *guardian, avenger, young man* (or *woman*), *infant, informer, judge, heir, companion, guide, chief, burgess, husband* (or *wife*), *hostage, bird, interpreter, author, exile, ox* (or *cow*), *deer, mole, tiger, crane, dog, snake, serpent, swine.*

[§ 28.] *Paunch, bear-constellation, canvas, distaff, ground, vine-leaf, winnowing-fan, pear-tree, sapphire, sea, poison, common-folk.*

[§ 29.] I. (1) *Spade, order, pirate, hinge, margin.* (2) *Weevil, bat, poniard, staff, butterfly, ternion, sice.* (3) *Echo, flesh.* (4) *Tree, surface* (or *sea*), *marble* (or *sea*), *heart.* (5) *Whetstone, dowry.* (6) *Osier, maple, stripe, spring, truffle, teat* (or *fertility*), *carcase, pepper, journey, poppy.* (7) *Fetter, mat, reward, sheaf, rest, crop, copper.* II. (1) *River, axle, stalk, hill, hind-leg, hair, bundle, bellows, bludgeon, fire, circle* (or *world*), *sword, bread, fish, doorpost, month, brand, talon, canal, lever, worm, birthday, stone, blood, cucumber, dust, nets, ghosts, dormouse.* (2) *Path, thorn, rope, end, collar, cinder.* (3) *Adamant, elephant, male, giant, as, bail, vessel.* (4) *Shears, law, death, furniture, pumice, tile, bolt, basalt, sorrel.* (5) *Arch, phoenix, cup.* (6) *Fountain, mountain, iron, dropsy, griffin, bridge, cable, torrent, tooth, client, one-third-part, trident, west, east.* (7) *Boar-pig, scimetar.* III. (1) *Bran, turtle-dove, vulture, thief.* (2) *Slavery, youth, virtue, safety, old-age, land, anvil, marsh.* (3) *Beast.* (4) *Hare, mouse.* (5) *Mullet, consul, salt, sun, boxer.* (6) *Kidney, spleen, comb, dolphin, woodcock.* (7) *Gorgon, linen, kingfisher.*

[§ 30.] *Tribe, needle, porch, house, daughter-in-law, mother-in-law, old-woman, Ides, hand.*

FIRST MEMORIAL SYNTAX.

ON AGREEMENT.

The Four General Rules.

[§ 88.] I. A Verb Finite agrees with the Nominative of its Subject in Number and Person:

Măgistĕr *dŏcĕt.*	Tū *dŏcēs*: nōs *discĭmŭs.*
The master teaches.	*Thou teachest: we learn.*
Lĭbrī *lĕguntŭr.*	Discĕrĕ *est* ūtĭlĕ.
Books are read.	*To learn is useful.*

[§ 89.] II. An Adjective agrees in Gender, Number, and Case with that to which it is in attribution:

Vĭr *bŏnŭs illĕ bŏnam hanc* uxōrem hăbĕt.
That good man has this good wife.

Hĭrundō pullīs *sŭīs orbātă* quĕrĭtŭr.
The swallow bereft of its young complains.

Cārī sunt părentēs; *cāră* est pătrĭă.
Dear are parents, dear is country.

Pŭĕrī discendō fīunt *doctī.*
Boys by learning become learned.

[§ 90.] III. A Substantive agrees in Case with that to which it is in apposition:

Nōs *pŭĕrī pătrem* Lollĭum ĭmĭtābĭmŭr.
We boys will imitate our father Lollius.

Effŏdĭuntŭr ŏpēs, *irrītāmentă* mălōrum.
Riches are dug out, incentives of evil.

Spēs est *expectātĭō* bŏnī.
Hope is the expectation of good.

Syllăbă longă brĕvī subjectă vŏcātŭr *Ĭambus.*
A long syllable following a short is called Iambus.

[§ 91.] IV. A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person; but in Case belongs to its own clause:

Dĕum vĕnĕrāmŭr *quī* nōs crĕāvĭt.
We worship God, who created us.

Ămīcŭs est, *quem* ămāmŭs, ā *quō* ămāmŭr.
A friend is one whom we love, by whom we are loved.

Ămō tē, mātĕr, *quae* mē ămās.
I love you, mother, who love me.

On the Composite Subject.

[§ 92.] With a Composite Subject Plural words agree:

Vĕnēnō *absumptī sunt* Hannĭbăl ĕt Phĭlŏpoemēn.
Hannibal and Philopoemen were cut off by poison.

1. If the Persons differ, Verbs agree with the Prior Person:*

Sī tū ĕt Tullĭă *vălētĭs*, ĕgŏ ĕt Cĭcĕrō *vălēmŭs*.
If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well.

2. When the Genders differ, Adjectives agree with the Masculine rather than with the Feminine:

Pătĕr mĭhĭ ĕt mātĕr *mortŭī* sunt.
My father and mother are dead.

a. If the things are lifeless, the Attributes are often Neuter:

Dīvĭtĭae, dĕcŭs, glōrĭă ĭn ŏcŭlīs *sĭtă* sunt.
Riches, honour, glory, are placed before our eyes.

ON CASES.

On the Cases of Subject and Complement.

[§ 93.] (1) The Subject of a Finite Verb is a Nominative:

Annī flŭĕre.
Years flee.

(2) The Complement of a Finite Verb is generally a Nominative:

Vītă est *somnĭum*.
Life is a dream.

Nēmŏ nascĭtŭr *săpiens*.
Nobody is born wise.

[§ 94.] (1.) The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative:

Constăt *annōs* flŭgĕrĕ.
It is agreed that years flee.

Scīmŭs *annōs* flŭgĕrĕ.
We know that years flee.

* The First Person is considered Prior to the Second, the Second to the Third.

(2) The Complement of an Infinitive is generally put in the Accusative:

Aiunt vītam essĕ *somnĭum.*
They say that life is a dream.

Constăt nēmĭnem nascī *săpientem.*
It is agreed that nobody is born wise.

a. The Construction of Accusative with Infinitive is called Oblique (Indirect) Statement.

ON THE ACCUSATIVE.

[§ 95.] The Accusative is the Case of the Nearer Object. It has also the power of limiting.

I. The Accusative of the Object.

[§ 96.] Transitive Verbs govern an Accusative of the Object:

Mātĕr ălit *pullōs.*
The mother nourishes the young ones.

In prīmīs vĕnĕrārĕ *Dĕum.*
In the first place worship God.

[§ 97.] Intransitive Verbs take an Accusative of kindred meaning:

Dūram servīt *servĭtūtem.*
He serves a hard slavery.

Claudĭŭs *ālĕam* lūsĭt.
Claudius played hazard.

[§ 98.] Some Verbs, especially those of *asking* and *teaching*, admit two Accusatives, one of the Thing, the other of the Person:

Nunquam *dīvĭtĭās dĕōs* rŏgāvī.
Never asked I of the gods riches.

Quĭd nunc *tē littĕrās* dŏcĕam?
Why now should I teach you letters?

[§ 99.] Factitive Verbs, that is, of *making*, *calling*, *thinking*, and the like, have two Accusatives, one of the Object, the other of the Complement:

Tē făcĭmus, Fortūnă, *dĕam.*
We make thee, Fortune, a goddess.

Rōmŭlŭs *urbem* sŭam *Rōmam* vŏcāvĭt.
Romulus called his city Rome.

II. The Accusative of Limitation.

[§ 100.] The Accusative of Respect is joined to Verbs and Adjectives, especially in poetry:

Trĕmĭt *artūs.*
He trembles in his limbs.

Nūdae sunt *lăcertōs.*
They are bare as to the arms.

[§ 101.] The Place, *Whither* one goes, is put in the Accusative; and without a Preposition, if it is either the name of a town, or dŏmŭs (*home*), rūs (*country*):

Rēgŭlŭs *Carthāgĭnem* rĕdĭĭt.
Regulus returned to Carthage.

Vōs ītĕ *dŏmum*: ĕgŏ *rūs* ībō.
Go ye home: I will go into the country.

[§ 102.] (1) The Duration of Time is put in the Accusative:

Pĕrĭclēs *quădrāgintā annōs* praefŭĭt Ăthēnīs.
Pericles led Athens forty years.

(2) The Measure of Space is put in the Accusative:

Ĕrant mūrī Băbўlōnīs *dŭcēnōs pĕdēs* altī.
The walls of Babylon were two hundred feet high.

[§ 103.] Many Prepositions govern an Accusative Case (see the list, § 83).

ON THE DATIVE.

[§ 104.] The Dative is the Case of the Recipient or Remoter Object.

§ 105. Words which throw their action over to the Remoter Object are called Trajective, and include many Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs, more rarely Substantives, by which is implied (1) Nearness or (2) Demonstration, (3) Gratification or (4) Dominion; and any notion contrary to these.

§ 106. I. Trajective Words take a Dative when the meanings implied are

(1) Nearness and its contraries:

Est fīnĭtĭmŭs *ōrātōrī* pŏētă.
A poet is near akin to an orator.

Nīl fŭĭt unquam sīc impār *sĭbī.*
Nothing was ever so unequal to itself.

Congrŭentēr *nātūrae* vīvendum est.
We should live agreeably to nature.

Praesentiă confĕr *praetĕrĭtīs.*
Compare present things with past.

Nec tămĕn ignōrat quid distent aerā *lŭpīnis.*
And yet he is not ignorant how coins differ from lupins.

(2) Demonstration and its contraries:

Dīc *mĭhĭ*, Dāmoetā, cūjum pĕcŭs?
Tell me, Damoetas, whose flock (is this)?

Anguĭs *Sullae* appārŭĭt immŏlantī.
A snake appeared to Sulla while sacrificing.

Haud *cuiquam* ĭn dŭbĭō ĕrāt bellum immĭnērĕ.
It was not doubtful to any one that war was imminent.

(3) Gratification and its contraries:

Pătrĭae sĭt ĭdōnĕŭs, ūtĭlĭs *āgrīs.*
Let him be serviceable to his country, useful to the lands.

Turbă grăvis *pācī* plăcĭdaeque ĭnĭmīcă *quĭētī.*
A crowd oppressive to peace and unfriendly to calm rest.

Quŏd *ălĭī* dōnāt *sĭbĭ* dētrăhĭt.
What he gives to another, he withdraws from himself.

Lūcem reddĕ tŭae, dux bŏnĕ, *pātrĭae.*
Restore light to thy country, good chief.

Nōbīs spondet fortūnă sălūtem.
Fortune guarantees safety to us.

Nē lĭbĕāt *tĭbĭ* quod *nēmĭnī* lĭcĕt.
Let not (that) *please thee which is lawful to no man.*

Parcĕ pĭō *gĕnĕrī.*
Spare a pious race.

Succensērĕ nĕfās *pătrĭae.*
It is impious to be wroth with one's country.

Rĕsistendum est *appĕtītĭbŭs.*
We should resist our passions.

(4) Dominion and its contraries:

Săpĭens, *sĭbĭ* qui impĕrĭōsus.
The wise man (is he) *who* (is) *lord over himself.*

Omnĭbŭs supplex est.
He is suppliant to all.

Impĕrăt aut servit collectă pĕcūnĭă *cuique.*
Amassed money sways or serves every man.

Mundŭs *Dĕō* pārĕt, et *huic* ŏbēdĭunt mărĭă terraeque.
The universe obeys God, and seas and lands hearken to Him.

a. Among Trajective words are many Verbs compounded with Particles, such as bĕnĕ (*well*), mălĕ (*ill*), sătĭs (*enough*),

rĕ, ăd, antĕ, con, ĭn, intĕr, dē, ŏb, sŭb, sŭpĕr, post, and prae:

Cētĕrīs sătisfăcĭō sempĕr, *mĭhĭ* nunquam.
I satisfy others always, myself never.

Sĭcĭlĭă quondam *Ītălĭae* ădhaesĭt.
Sicily once was attached to Italy.

Gĭgantēs bellum *dīs* intŭlērunt.
The giants waged war on the gods.

Ănătum ōvă *gallīnīs* suppōnĭmŭs.
We place eggs of ducks under hens.

§ 107. II. A Dative of the Recipient can be added anywhere with a certain notion of Advantage or Disadvantage.

Esto, ut nunc multī, dīves *tĭbĭ*, paupĕr *ămīcīs*.
Be, as many are now, rich for thyself, poor for friends.

Nŭmă virgĭnēs *Vestae* lēgĭt.
Numa chose virgins for Vesta.

Vĕnŭs nupsĭt *Vulcānō*.
Venus wedded Vulcan (lit. *veiled herself for Vulcan*).

Philŏsŏphĭae sempĕr văcō.
I always am at leisure for philosophy.

a. Refer here the Dative of the Pronoun, which is called the Ethic Dative:

Quid *mĭhĭ* Celsŭs ăgit?
What (is) *my Celsus doing?*

b. Sum with its compounds, except possum, takes a Dative:

Sum *tĭbĭ* Mercŭrĭus.
I am to thee Mercury.

Vir *mĭhĭ* sempĕr ăbest.
My husband is always absent from me.

c. Est, sunt, with a Dative, often imply *having*:

Est *hŏmĭnī* cum Dĕō sĭmĭlĭtūdō.
Man has a resemblance to God.

Sunt *nōbīs* mītĭă pōma.
We have mellow apples.

d. The same Dative is joined to Participles and Participials of the Passive Voice, especially to Gerundives:

Magnus cīvĭs ŏbĭt et formīdātŭs *Ŏthōnī*.
A great citizen is dead, and one dreaded by Otho.

Multīs illĕ *bŏnīs* flēbĭlĭs occĭdĭt.
He died a cause of weeping to many good men.

Lĕgendae sunt *pŭĕrīs* Aesōpī fābŭlae.
The fables of Æsop are to be read by boys.

§ 108. III. A Dative of the Thing is used as a Complement, a Dative of the Recipient being often added:

Nĭmĭă fīdūcĭă *călămĭtātī* sŏlĕt essĕ.
Too much confidence is wont to be a calamity.

Exĭtĭo est ăvĭdum mărĕ *nautīs.*
The greedy sea is a destruction to sailors.

§ 109. IV. A Dative of the Complement is used by Attraction, especially in expressions of *naming*:

Lĭcŭĭt Thĕmistŏclī essĕ *ōtĭōsō.*
It was lawful for Themistocles to be at leisure.

Huic ĕgŏ dĭēī nōmĕn *Trĭnūmō* făcĭam.
To this day I will give the name Trinumus.

ON THE ABLATIVE.

[§ 110.] The Ablative is the Case of circumstances which attend action, and limit it adverbially. It defines also Time and Place.

[§ 111.] I. Ablative of Cause:

Ōdērunt peccārĕ bŏnī virtūtīs *ămōre.*
The good hate to sin from love of virtue.

Coeptīs immānībŭs effĕrā Dīdō.
Dido wild with horrid purposes.

[§ 112.] II. Ablative of the Instrument:

Hī *jăcŭlīs,* illī certant dēfendĕrĕ *saxīs.*
These strive to defend with javelins, those with stones.

[§ 113.] III. Ablative of Manner:

Injūrĭă fĭt dŭōbŭs *mŏdīs,* aut *vī* aut *fraudĕ.*
Wrong is done in two manners, either by force or by fraud.

[§ 114.] IV. Ablative of Condition:

Pācĕ tŭā cum Thāĭdĕ collŏquăr.
With your leave I will converse with Thais.

Hŏmŏ *mĕā sententĭā* prūdentissĭmŭs est.
He is a man in my opinion very prudent.

[§ 115.] V. Ablative of Quality, with Epithet:

Quā făcĭē fŭĭt, cui dĕdistī symbŏlum?
Of what aspect was he to whom you gave the ticket?

Sĕnex *prōmissā barbā, horrentī căpillō.*
An old man with long beard and rough hair.

[§ 116.] VI. Ablative of Respect:

Angŏr *ănĭmō*.
I am distressed in mind.

Ennĭŭs *ingĕnĭō* maxĭmŭs, *artĕ* rŭdis.
Ennius, mighty in genius, in art (is) rude.

[§ 117.] VII. Ablative of Price:

Ĕgŏ spem *prĕtĭō* nōn ĕmō.
I buy not hope at a cost.

Quŏd nōn ŏpŭs est, *assĕ* cārum est.
What is not needful is dear at a penny.

[§ 118.] VIII. Ablative of Measure:

Longum *sesquĭpĕdĕ*, lātum *pĕdĕ* est.
It is a foot and a half long, a foot wide.

Sōl *multīs partĭbŭs* mājŏr est quam lūnă.
The sun is many times larger than the moon.

Tantō pessĭmŭs omnĭum pŏētă,
Quantō tu optĭmŭs omnĭum pătrōnŭs.

By so much the worst poet of all,
As you (are) the best patron of all.

[§ 119.] IX. Ablative of Matter:

Cībŭs ĕōrum *lactĕ, cāsĕō, carnĕ* constăt.
Their food consists of milk, cheese, and flesh.

(*a*) These words govern an Ablative: (1) The Verbs fungŏr (*perform*), frŭŏr (*enjoy*), ūtŏr (*use*), vescŏr (*eat*), pŏtĭŏr (*get possession of*), dignŏr (*deem worthy*). (2) The Adjectives dignŭs (*worthy*), indignŭs (*unworthy*), contentŭs (*content*), frētŭs (*relying*), praedĭtŭs (*endued*). (3) The Substantives ŏpŭs (*need*), ūsŭs (*use*):

(1) Fungar *vĭcĕ* cōtĭs.
I will perform the function of a whetstone.

Hannĭbăl, cum *victōrĭā* possĕt ūtī, frŭī mālŭĭt.
Hannibal, when he might have used his victory, preferred to enjoy it.

Rex impĭŭs *aurō* vī pŏtĭtur. § 133.
The impious king gets possession of the gold by force.

(2) Dignum *laudĕ* vĭrum Mūsă vĕtat mŏrī.
A man worthy of praise the Muse forbids to die.

(3) Ŭbĭ rēs adsunt, quĭd ŏpŭs est *verbīs?*
When things are present, what need is there of words?

Ūsŭs est fīlĭō *vīgintī* mĭnīs.
My son needs twenty minas.

1. Most Adjectives and Verbs *of abounding* or *wanting, enriching* or *depriving*, take an Ablative; many also a Genitive:

Amŏr ĕt *mellĕ* ĕt *fellĕ* est fēcundissĭmŭs.
Love is very fruitful both in honey and gall.

Nunquam ănĭmŭs *mōtū* văcŭŭs est.
The mind is never void of motion.

Vīs *consĭli* expers mōlĕ rŭit sŭā.
Force devoid of counsel falls by its own weight.

Mancĭpĭīs lŏcŭplēs ĕgĕt *aeris* Cappădŏcum rex.
The king of the Cappadocians, rich in slaves, lacks coin.

Văcārĕ *culpā* maxĭmum est sōlātĭum.
To be free from blame is a very great comfort.

§ [120.] X. The Ablative of Time answers the questions: *When? Within what time? How long before or after?*

Hĭĕmĕ omnĭă bellă conquĭescunt.
In winter all wars rest.

Quidquĭd est *bīdŭō* scīēmŭs.
Whatever there is we shall know in two days.

Hŏmērŭs *annīs multīs* fŭĭt antĕ Rōmŭlum.
Homer was many years before Romulus.

§ [121.] XI. A. The Ablative of Place is put without a Preposition, when the question is, *By what road?*

Ībam fortĕ *Vĭā Sācrā*.
I was going by chance on the Sacred Road.

B. The Ablative is often without a Preposition when the question is, *Where?* especially if it is the name of a town, or if it stands with an Epithet.

Phĭlippŭs *Nĕāpŏlī* est, Lentŭlŭs *Pŭtĕōlīs*.
Philippus is at Naples, Lentulus at Puteoli.

Tăbernae *tōtā urbĕ* clauduntŭr.
The shops are closed in the whole city.

a. Singular names of towns of the first and second Declension define the place of station by cases in *ae*, *i*:

Quid *Rōmae* făcĭam?	Ĭs hăbĭtăt *Mīlētī*.
What can I do at Rome?	*He dwells at Miletus.*

b. Like these are hŭmī (*on the ground*), dŏmī (*at home*), bellī, mīlĭtĭae (*at the wars*), rūrī (*in the country*):

Caesărĭs virtūs *dŏmī mīlĭtĭaeque* cognĭtă est.
Caesar's virtue was known at home and at the wars.

C. The Ablative of a town is without a Preposition, when the question is, *Whence?*

Dēmărātŭs fūgĭt *Cŏrinthō.*
Demaratus fled from Corinth.

a. So dŏmō (*from home*), rūrĕ (*from the country*).

On the Accusative of Place *Whither*, see § 101.

§ [122.] XII. Various Prepositions govern an Ablative. (See the list, § 83).

a. Prepositions, even when compounded, govern an Ablative, especially ăb, dē, ex:

Quinctĭŭs *dictātūrā* sē abdĭcāvĭt.
Quinctius resigned the dictatorship.

Dētrūdunt nāvēs *scŏpŭlō.*
They thrust off the ships from the rock.

b. The Ablative of the Agent takes the Preposition *ā, ăb*:

Laudātŭr ăb *hīs,* culpātŭr ăb *illīs.*
He is praised by these, he is blamed by those.

[§ 123.] XIII. The Ablative of Separation and Origin is joined also without a Preposition to Verbs and Participles:

Cēdēs cŏemptīs *saltĭbŭs* et *dŏmō.*
You will retire from purchased glades and mansion.

Pĕlŏpĕ nātŭs, *Tantălō* prognātŭs est.
He was born of Pelops, descended from Tantalus.

[§ 124.] XIV. Ablative of the Thing Compared:

(1) For quam (*than*) with Nominative:

Nĭhĭl est ămābĭlĭŭs *virtūtĕ.*
Nothing is more amiable than virtue.

Vīlĭŭs argentum est *aurō, virtūtĭbŭs* aurum.
Silver is less valuable than gold, gold than virtues.

(2) For quam with Accusative:

Pŭtŏ mortem *dēdĕcŏrĕ* lĕvĭōrem.
I think death easier than disgrace.

Nēmĭnem *Lўcurgō* ūtĭlĭōrem Spartă gĕnŭĭt.
Sparta produced no man more serviceable than Lycurgus.

[§ 125.] XV. A Substantive combines with a Participle in the Ablative which is called Absolute:

Rēgĭbŭs exactīs consŭlēs crĕātī sunt.
Kings having been driven out, consuls were elected.

a. For the Participle is often supplied another Substantive, or an Adjective:

Nīl despērandum Teucrō *dŭce* ĕt *auspĭcĕ* Teucrō.
There must be no despair with Teucer for leader, and Teucer for omen-giver.

Nātŭs est Augustŭs *consŭlĭbŭs* Cĭcĕrōnĕ et Antōnĭō.
Augustus was born when Cicero and Antonius were consuls.

Jamquĕ cĭnis, *vīvīs* frātrĭbŭs, Hectŏr ĕrat.
And now Hector was ashes, his brothers being alive.

Quĭd dīcam, *hāc* jŭventūtĕ?
What can I say, when our young men are of this stamp?

ON THE GENITIVE.

[§ 126.] The Genitive, the Case of the Proprietor, generally defines Nouns, either subjectively or objectively.

A. The Subjective Genitive.

§ 127.] I. Genitive of the Author and Possessor:

Pŏlўclētī signă plānē perfectă sunt.
Polycletus's statues are quite perfect.

Singŭlōrum ŏpēs sunt dīvĭtĭae *cīvĭtātĭs*.
The resources of individuals are the riches of the state.

Omnĭă, quae *mŭlĭĕrĭs* fŭērunt, *vĭrī* fīunt.
All things, which were the woman's, become the husband's.

Ĕă stătŭă dīcēbātŭr essĕ *Mўrōnĭs*.
That statue was said to be Myro's.

a. Sometimes the Genitive depends on a word omitted.

Hectŏrĭs Andrŏmăchē (supplē *uxŏr*).
Hector's Andromache (supply *wife*).

Ventum ĕrăt ad *Vestae* (supplē *templum*).
We had come to Vesta's (supply *temple*).

b. A Genitive so stands that *nature*, *token*, *function*, or *duty*, can be supplied.

Cūjusvīs *hŏmĭnĭs* est errārĕ.
It is in any man's nature to err.

Est *ădŏlescentĭs* mājōrēs nātū vĕrērī.
The young man's duty is to reverence elders.

Tempŏrī cēdĕrĕ hăbētŭr *săpĭentĭs*.
To yield to occasion is held a wise man's function.

[§ 128.] II. Genitive of Quality, with Epithet.

Ingĕnŭī vultūs pŭĕr *ingĕnŭīquĕ pŭdōris.*
A boy of high-bred countenance and high-bred modesty.

Claudĭŭs ĕrăt *somnī brĕvissĭmī.*
Claudius was (a man) *of very brief slumber.*

a. The Elliptic Genitives may be remarked: parvī (*of small worth*), mĭnōrĭs (*of less value*), mĭnĭmī (*of very little worth*), magnī (*of great price*), plūrĭs (*of more value*), plūrĭmī, (*of high value*), tantī (*of so great price*), quantī (*of what price*), maxĭmī (*of very great price*), to which supply prĕtĭī:

Vŏluptātem virtūs *mĭnĭmī* făcĭt.
Virtue makes pleasure of very small account.

Ēmīt hortōs *tantī quantī* Pўthĭŭs vŏlŭīt.
He bought the pleasure-ground at such price as Pythius wanted.

[§ 129.] III. Intĕrest (*it imports*), rēfert (*it concerns*), admit a Genitive:

Intĕrest *omnĭum* rectē făcĕrĕ.
It imports all men to act rightly.

Rēfert *compŏsĭtĭōnĭs* quae quĭbŭs antĕpōnās.
It concerns arrangement what things you place before what.

a. The same Verbs instead of the Genitives of Pronouns use the Possessive Cases, mĕā, tŭā, sŭā, nostrā, vestrā, cūjā, agreeing with rē:

Ĕt *tŭā* ĕt *mĕā* intĕrest tē vălērĕ.
It imports both your weal and mine, that you be well.

Quĭd *nostrā* ĭd rēfert?
What (*does*) *that concern us?*

[§ 130.] IV. A Genitive of the Thing Distributed is joined to Partitive words, which, as far as may be, take the Gender of the Genitive:

Ĕlĕphantō *bēlŭārum* est nullă prūdentĭŏr.
Of beasts, none is more sagacious than the elephant.

Hŏmĭnī ūnī *ănĭmantĭum* luctŭs est dătŭs.
To man alone of animals sorrow has been given.

Sullă centum vīgintī *sŭōrum* āmīsĭt.
Sulla lost a hundred and twenty of his men.

Mājor *Nĕrōnum* mox grăvĕ praelĭum commīsĭt.
The elder of the Neros ere long fought a severe battle.

Gallōrum fortissĭmī sunt Belgae.
The Belgæ are bravest of the Gauls.

Nēmō *mortālium* ōmnĭbŭs hōrīs săpit.
Of mortals nobody is wise at all hours.

Piscĭum fēmĭnae mājōrēs sunt quam mărēs.
Of fishes the females (are) larger than the males.

Sĕquĭmur tē, sanctĕ *dĕōrum.*
We follow thee, holy one of gods.

Hōc ăd tē mĭnĭmē *omnĭum* pertĭnĕt.
This belongs to thee least of all men.

a. Nostrûm (*of us*), vestrûm (*of you*), follow Partitives:

Tē vĕnīrĕ ŭterquĕ *nostrûm* cŭpĭt.
Each of us desires that you come.

[§ 131.] V. A Genitive of the Thing Measured follows Words of Quantity and Neuter Adjectives:

Sătĭs *ēlŏquentĭae, săpientĭae* părum est.
He has enough eloquence, too little wisdom.

Ălĭquĭd pristĭnī *rōbŏrĭs* conservăt.
He keeps something of his old strength.

Quantum *nūmōrum,* tantum *fĭdēī* est.
There is the same amount of credit as of money.

B. The Objective Genitive.

[§ 132.] I. A Genitive is joined objectively to Substantives, Adjectives, or Participles, which have a certain transitive force, especially if they signify *skill*, *care*, *desire*, or whatever is contrary to these.

Insĭtŭs est mentī *cognĭtĭōnĭs* ămor.
Love of knowledge is implanted in the mind.

Difficĭlĭs est cūră *rērum ălĭēnārum.*
Hard is the care of other people's affairs.

Tempŭs ĕdax *rērum* est.
Time is consumer of things.

Corpŭs pătĭens *ĭnĕdĭae* fŭĭt.
His body was capable of enduring inanition.

Conscĭă mens *rectī* est.
The mind is conscious of rectitude.

Impĕrītŭs *mōrum* fŭĭt.
He was unskilled in manners.

Ăvĭdă est *pĕrīcŭlī* virtūs.
Valour is greedy of danger.

Anĭmŭs fŭĭt *ălĭēnī* appĕtens, *sŭī* prŏfūsŭs.
His mind was desirous of another's (wealth), *lavish of his own.*

a. Mĕī, tŭī, sŭī, nostrī, vestrī, are put objectively; mĕŭs, tŭŭs, sŭŭs, nostĕr, vestĕr, subjectively:

Nīcĭās *tŭā sŭī* mĕmŏrĭā dēlectātŭr.
Nicias is charmed with your recollection of him.

(*a*) A Subjective Genitive understood in a Possessive Pronoun admits a Genitive agreeing with it:

Respublĭcă *mĕā ūnīŭs* ŏpĕrā salvă ĕrăt.
The state was saved by my single exertion.

Ăvēs fētūs ădultōs *sŭae ipsōrum* fīdūcĭae permittunt.
Birds entrust grown nestlings to their own self-reliance.

[§ 133.] II. A Genitive is joined to Verbs and Adjectives which signify *power* and *impotence*, *inculpation*, *innocence*, *condemnation*, *acquittal*, *memory* and *forgetfulness*:

(1) Rōmānī *signōrum* pŏtītī sunt. § 119 *a.*
The Romans gained the standards.

Īră est impŏtens *sŭī*.
Anger is incapable of self-restraint.

(2) Frāternī est *sanguĭnĭs* insons.
He is innocent of a brother's blood.

Rĕŭs est *injūrĭārum*.
He is arraigned of injurious acts.

(3) Pĕtillĭŭs *furtī* absŏlūtŭs est.
Petillius was acquitted of theft.

Condemnāmŭs hăruspĭcēs *stultĭtĭae*.
We condemn soothsayers (as guilty) *of folly.*

(4) Rēs adversae admŏnent nōs *rēlĭgĭōnum*.
Adversity reminds us of religious duties.

Omnēs immĕmŏrem *bĕnĕfĭcĭī* ōdērunt.
All men hate one unmindful of a kindness.

a. Mĕmĭnī, rĕmĭnĭscŏr, rĕcordŏr, (*I remember*), oblīvĭscŏr (*I forget*), admit Genitive or Accusative:

Jŭbet *mortis* tē mĕmĭnissĕ Dĕus.
God bids thee remember death.

Dulcēs mŏrĭens rĕmĭnĭscĭtŭr *Argōs*.
Dying he remembers sweet Argos.

[§ 134.] III. Pĭgĕt (*it irks*), pŭdĕt (*it shames*), paenĭtĕt (*it repents*), taedĕt (*it disgusts*), and mĭsĕrĕt (*it moves pity*), Impersonal Verbs, take a Genitive with an Accusative:

Mĭsĕrĕt *tē ălĭōrum*: *tŭī* nĕc mĭsĕrĕt nĕc pŭdĕt.
Thou pitiest others, for thyself without pity or shame.

Ĕōs partim *scĕlĕrum*, partim *ĭneptĭārum* paenĭtĕt.
They repent, some of their crimes, others of their follies.

[§ 135.] IV. Mĭsĕrĕŏr, mĭsĕrescō (*I pity*), take a Genitive; mĭsĕrŏr, commĭsĕrŏr (*I compassionate*), an Accusative:

Arcădĭī, quaesō, mĭsĕrescĭtĕ *rēgis.*
Pity, I pray, the Arcadian king.

Sortem mĭsĕrātŭr ĭnīquam.
He compassionates the unjust fate.

[§ 136.] VI. The Genitive (is) freely used by poets. But aegĕr ănĭmī (*sick at heart*), ănĭmī pendĕō (*I waver in mind*), and the like, appear even in prose.

On Cases out of the Sentence.

[§ 137.] The Vocative stands out of the Sentence either without an Interjection or with an Interjection:

Ōrō tĕ, *fīlī* (vĕl *O fīlī*).
I pray thee, son (or, *O son*).

[§ 138.] The Nominative and the Accusative are used in Exclamations either without an Interjection or with an Interjection:

(1) *Infandum!* — *Unutterable!*
(2) *Mē mĭsĕrum!* — *Wretched me!*

Eccĕ *nŏvă turbă!* — *Lo, a new disturbance!*
Ēn *quattŭŏr ārăs!* — *Lo, four altars!*

[§ 139.] So the Dative is put with hei (*alas!*), vae (*woe!*).

Hei *mĭsĕrō mĭhi!* — *Alas wretched me!*
Vae *victīs!* — *Woe to the vanquished!*

ON THE VERB INFINITE.

[§ 140.] I. The Infinitive stands—

1. Substantively, for Nominative or Accusative:

(1) *Invĭdērĕ* nōn cădět ĭn săpĭentem.
Envying happens not to a wise man.

Dulce et dĕcōrum est prō pătrĭā *mŏrī.*
Dying for country is sweet and comely.

(2) *Mŏrī* nĕmŏ săpĭens mĭsĕrum dixĕrĭt.
No wise man will call it miserable to die.

2. Predicatively, in narration, for a Finite Verb:

Multī *sĕquī, fŭgĕrĕ, occīdī, căpī.*
Many were following, flying, being slain, being captured.

3. Obliquely, with Accusative of the Subject. See § 94.

4. Carrying on the construction of a Verb or Adjective:

Sŏlent dĭū *cōgĭtārĕ* quī magnă vŏlunt *gĕrĕrĕ.*
They are wont to reflect long who wish to perform great things.

Pătrĭae dīcĕrĭs *essĕ* păter.
Thou art said to be father of thy country.

Lūdum insŏlentem *lūdĕrĕ* pertĭnax.
Persisting to play an insolent game.

[§ 141.] II. Gerunds and Supines are the Cases of the Infinitive.

1. The Accusative of the Gerund is joined to Prepositions:

Ăd bĕnĕ *vīvendum* brĕvĕ tempŭs sătĭs est.
For living well a short time is sufficient.

2. The Genitive of the Gerund is joined to Substantives and Adjectives:

Ars *scrībendī* discĭtŭr. | Cŭpĭdŭs *audiendī* est.
The art of writing is learnt. | *He is desirous of hearing.*

3. The Dative of the Gerund is joined to Nouns and Verbs:

Păr est *dissĕrendō.* | Dăt ŏpĕram *lĕgendō.*
He is competent for arguing. | *He pays attention to reading.*

4. The Ablative of the Gerund is of cause or manner, or joined to a Preposition:

Fŭgiendō vincĭmŭs. | *Dē pugnandō* dēlĭbĕrant.
We conquer by flying. | *They deliberate about fighting.*

5. The Supine in *um* is an Accusative after Verbs of motion:

Lūsum it Maecēnās, *dormītum* ĕgŏ.
Mæcenas goes to play, I to sleep.

a. Īrī with the Supine forms the Infinitive of the Future Passive:

Audĭĕrăt nōn *dătum īrī* fīlĭō uxōrem sŭō.
He had heard (*that there was*) *no intention* (non īrī) *to give a wife to his son.*

6. The Supine in *u* is for an Ablative of Respect:

Foedum *dictū* est. | Nĕfās *vīsū* est.
It is horrible to state. | *It is impious to view.*

[§ 142.] III. The Infinitive, with Gerund, Participles, and Supine in *um*, governs the same Cases as the Verb Finite:

Cŭpĭō sătisfăcĕrĕ *rĕīpublĭcae.*
I desire to satisfy the commonwealth.

Cŭpĭdŭs sum sătĭsfăcĭendī *rĕīpublĭcae.*
I am desirous of satisfying the commonwealth.

Ausi omnēs immānĕ *nĕfās ausō*quĕ pŏtītī.
All dared monstrous impiety, and achieved their daring.

Ast ĕgŏ non Graiīs servītum *mātrĭbŭs* ībō.
But I will not go to be a slave to Greek matrons.

[§ 143.] In Transitive Gerunds the Gerundive Attraction is more usual; the rule for which construction is the following:

The Object is attracted to the Case of the Gerund, the Gerund to the Number and Gender of the Object:

Brūtŭs ĭn *lĭbĕrandā pătrĭā* est interfectŭs.
Brutus was slain in freeing his country.

Hī septemvĭrī fŭērunt *ăgrīs dīvĭdendīs.*
These were the seven commissioners for dividing lands.

[§ 144.] IV. 1. The Impersonal Gerundive construction implies necessity, principally in Intransitive Verbs:

Bĭbendum est.	*Ĕundum ĕrĭt.*
One must drink.	*One will (have) to go.*

a. To this may be joined a Dative, more rarely an Ablative with *ā, ăb*:

Bĭbendum est *nōbīs.*	*Vōbīs* ĕundum ĕrĭt.
We must drink.	*You will (have) to go.*

b. And whatever other Case is governed by the Verb:

Cīvĭbŭs est ā vōbīs consŭlendum.
You must consult for the citizens.

Sŭō cuīquĕ *jūdĭcĭō* est ūtendum.
Each must use his own judgment.

Eudoxŭs ŏpīnātŭr *Chaldaeīs* mĭnĭmē essĕ crēdendum.
Eudoxus thinks that astrologers should by no means be believed.

2. The Attributive construction of the Gerundive implies necessity, in Transitive Verbs:

Dĕŭs ĕt *dīlĭgendŭs* est nōbīs ĕt *tĭmendŭs.*
God is both to be loved and feared by us.

Nōn tangendă rătēs transĭlĭunt vădă.
Barks o'erleap the shallows (which should) *not be meddled with.*

ON THE PRONOUN.

[§ 145.] Sē, sŭŭs, Reflexive Pronouns, are referred to the Subject of the principal Sentence, provided it be of the third Person:

Sentĭt ănĭmŭs *sē* vī *sŭā* mŏvērī.
The mind feels (that) *it is moved by its own force.*

a. Reflexives can be referred to the Object, if that reference involves no ambiguity:

Scīpīōnem impellĭt ostentātĭō *sŭī.*
Ostentation of self sways Scipio.

Ăpĭbŭs fructum restĭtŭō *sŭum.*
I restore to the bees their produce.

Mors *sŭă* quemquĕ mănet.
His death awaits every man.

ON SOME PARTICLES.

[§ 146.] Many Conjunctions annex like words to like:

Mīrātur portās strĕpĭtum*que et* strātă vīārum.
He marvels at the gates and the noise and the pavements of the streets.

Virtūs *nĕc* ērīpī *nĕc* surrīpī pŏtest.
Virtue can neither be torn away nor stolen.

Nēmĭnem săpĭentĭōrem pŭtŏ *quam* Sōcrătem.
I deem no man wiser than Socrates.

Omnĕ sŏlum fortī pătrĭa est, *ut* piscĭbŭs aequor.
Every soil is a country to the brave man, as the sea to fishes.

[§ 147.] Nē prohibitive is used with an Imperative or Conjunctive Mood: nēdum (*not to say, much less*), ŭtīnam (*O that*), O sī, ŭt for ŭtīnam, with a Conjunctive:

Nē quă mĕīs estō dictīs mŏră.
Let there be no delay to my orders.

Nē culpam ĭn mē contŭlĕrĭs.
Lay not the fault on me.

Neu dēsint ĕpŭlīs rŏsae.
And (*let*) *roses not be wanting to the feast.*

Mortālĭă factă pĕrībunt,
Nēdum sermōnum stĕt hŏnōs et grātĭă vīvax.
Mortal deeds will perish, much less (can) the honour and popularity of literary works stand permanent.

Ŭtĭnam mĭnŭs vītae cŭpĭdī fŭissēmŭs.
Would that we had been less fond of life.

O sī urnam argentī fors quae mĭhĭ monstrĕt!
O if some chance would show me a pot of silver!

Ŭt illum dī dĕaeque perdant.
I wish that the gods and goddesses may destroy him.

OUTLINE OF RULES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

[§ 148.] The Conjunctive Mood is used, purely, in various senses: but, if it is subjoined to another Verb, it is called Subjunctive.

[§ 149.] Pronouns and Particles, which interrogate obliquely, require a Subjunctive:

Ipsĕ quis *sĭt*, ŭtrum *sĭt*, an nōn *sĭt*, id quŏquĕ nescit.
He knows not even this, who himself is, whether he is, or is not.

Such Interrogatives are:

Quantŭs (*how great*)
Ŭtĕr (*which of two*)
Quālĭs (*of what sort*)
Quĭs (*who or what*)
Quŏt (*how many*)
Quŏtŭs (*which, in order of number*)
Undĕ (*whence*)
Ŭbĭ (*where or when*)
Quandō (*when*)
Cūr (*why*)
Quŏtĭēs (*how often*)
Quārē (*wherefore*)
Quam (*how*)
Quōmŏdŏ (*how*)
Num, nĕ (*whether*)
Ŭt (*how*)
An, ŭtrum (*whether*).

[§ 150.] The Relative quī, with its Particles, ŭbĭ (*where, when*, &c.), undĕ (*whence*), and the rest, in its simple sense, takes an Indicative; if there is implied in it *since, although, in order that*, or *such that*, a Subjunctive:

Mĭsĕrĕt tŭī mē, quī hunc *făcĭas* ĭnĭmīcum tĭbī.
I pity you, since you make this man your foe.

Littĕras mīsī quĭbŭs ĕt *plācārem* eŭm ĕt *mŏnērem*.
I sent a letter wherewith I might pacify and admonish him.

Quĭs est quī nōn *ōdĕrĭt* prŏtervam pŭĕrĭtĭam?
Who is there that hates not saucy boyhood?

Dignă rēs est ŭbĭ nervōs *intendās*.
The matter is worthy (that) *you devote your energies to it.*

[§ 151.] A Relative or Conjunction, if it is subordinate to Oration actually or virtually oblique, requires a Subjunctive.

Ennĭŭs nōn censĕt lūgendam essĕ mortem, quam immortālĭtās *consĕquātŭr.*
Ennius considers that death (ought) not to be mourned, which immortality succeeds.

Sōcrătēs accūsātŭs est quŏd *corrumpĕrĕt* jŭventūtem.
Socrates was accused (on the charge) that he corrupted youth.

a. To a Conjunctive Mood a Subjunctive is often subordinated.

Clāmant omnēs: praestārĕt quŏd *rĕcēpissĕt.*
All cry out, he should perform what he had undertaken.

[§ 152.] Of Conjunctions governing * Moods there are three Classes:

I. The First Class consists of those Conjunctions, to which the Subjunctive is appropriate:

(1) Consecutive:
Ŭt (*so that*)

(2) Final:
Ŭt (*in order that*)
Nē (*lest, that . . . not*)
Quō (*in order that*)
Quōmĭnŭs (*but that*)
Quīn (*but that*)

(3) Causal:
Quum (*since*)

(4) Conditional:
Dum, Mŏdŏ, Dummŏdŏ } (*provided that*)

(5) Concessive:
Lĭcĕt, Quamvīs, Ŭt } (*although*)

(6) Comparative:
Tanquam, Vĕlŭt, ceu, Quăsĭ, &c. } (*as if*)

II. The Second Class consists of those Conjunctions, to which the Indicative is appropriate, unless they are subordinate to oration actually or virtually oblique.

(1) Causal:
Quŏd, quĭă (*because*)
Quŏnĭam (*since*)
Quandŏquĭdem (*since*)
Sĭquĭdem (*inasmuch as*)

(2) Temporal:
Quandō, quum, ŭbĭ (*when*)
Ŭt (*when, since*)
Quŏtĭēs (*as often as*)
Sĭmŭl (*as soon as*)
Post-quam (*after that*)
Dum, Dōnĕc, Quŏăd } (*whilst, as long as*)

(3) Concessive:
Quamquam (*although, however*)
Ŭtŭt (*however*)

* When we speak of Moods being *governed* by Conjunctions, we mean only that certain Conjunctions are used, always or in certain senses, with certain Moods. The

III. The Third Class consists of those Conjunctions which either the Indicative or the Subjunctive follows, according as the matter put forth is real or imagined.

(1) Temporal:	(2) Conditional and Concessive:
Dum, dōnĕc, quŏăd (*until*)	Sī (*if*)
Antĕ-quam } (*before that*)	Nĭsĭ (*unless*)
Prĭus-quam } (*before that*)	Etsī, ĕtĭamsī (*although, even if*)

a. [§ 153.] Idioms of the Latin language are:

(1) Quum (*when*) followed by a Subjunctive of the Imperfect or Pluperfect.

Zēnōnem, quum Ăthēnīs *essem*, audīēbam frĕquentĕr.
I often used to hear Zeno, when I was at Athens.

Dēcessĭt Agēsĭlāŭs quum ĭn portum *vēnissĕt*.
Agesilaus died, when he had come into harbour.

(2) Dum (*whilst*), followed by an Indicative Present, even in oblique subordination, and concerning a past circumstance:

Quem ardōrem stŭdĭī censētĭs fŭissĕ ĭn Archĭmēdē, quī, *dum* ĭn pulvĕrĕ quaedam *dēscrībĭt* attentĭŭs, nē pātrĭam quĭdem captam essĕ sensĕrĭt?

What ardour of study think ye there was in Archimedes, who, whilst drawing some figures in the dust with peculiar attention, did not perceive even that his country was captured?

b. [§ 154.] A Conjunction is sometimes understood.

Phĭlŏsŏphĭae servĭās ŏportĕt.
It behoves (that you) *be a servant to philosophy* (supply ut).

Quaeram justum sit necnĕ pŏēma.
I will inquire (whether) *it be a true poem or not* (supply ŭtrum).

Partem ŏpĕre in tantō, sĭnĕret dŏlŏr, Īcăre, hăbērēs.
Thou, Icarus, wouldst have a share in this great work, did grief allow (supply sī).

c. [§ 155.] The Rule for the Consecution of Tenses is, that Primary Tenses are subordinated to Primary, Historic to Historic. (§ 48).

Examples may be looked out from the Syntax.

---

reason of Mood is independent of Conjunctions; but Conjunctions distinguish the relations of Clauses more fully, as Prepositions distinguish the relations of Nouns.

Supplementary Rules of Agreement.

[§ 156.] (1) Adjectives are put for Substantives:

Multă paupĕrī dēsunt, *ăvārō omnĭă.*
Many things are wanting to the poor man, to the miser all things.

(2) Infinitives are put for Substantives:

Vīvĕrĕ est *vălērĕ.*
To live is to be well.

(3) Clauses are put for Substantives:

Crēdĭbĭlĕ est *omnĭă consĭlĭō fĭĕrī.*
It is probable that all things happen by design.

[§ 157.] The Nominative of an Impersonal Verb is not apparent unless it be an Infinitive or a Clause:

Pŭdĕt ĕum factī (i.e. *pŭdŏr* pŭdĕt).
He is ashamed of the act.

Quĭd agĭtŭr? *Stātŭr* (i.e. *stătĭō* fĭt).
What is being done? There is a stand-still.

Taedĕt ĕădem *audīrĕ* millĭēs.
To hear the same things a thousand times is tedious.

Magnī intĕrest *ŭt tē vĭdĕam.*
It is of great importance that I should see you.

[§ 158.] A Word is understood when omitted by the figure Ellipsis:

Nĭhĭl bŏnum nĭsĭ quŏd hŏnestum (understand *est* twice).
Nothing is good but what is morally right.

Perfundor gĕlĭdā (understand *ăquā*).
I bathe myself with cold water.

[§ 159.] Agreement is varied by the figure called Attraction:

Nōn omnĭs errŏr stultĭtĭă est *dīcendă.*
Not every error must be called folly.

Thēbae, *quŏd* Boeōtĭae căpŭt est.
Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.

[§ 160.] Agreement with the meaning takes place by the figure called Synesis, especially in poetry:

Sŭbĕunt Tĕgĕaeă jŭventūs auxĭlĭō *tardī.*
The youth of Tegea come slow to the succour.

Ŭbĭ est *ĭs* scĕlŭs, *quī* mē perdĭdĭt?
Where is that villain, who has ruined me?

OUTLINE OF PROSODY.

[§ 161.] Prosody treats of the quantity of syllables and of the laws f metre.

ON THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

[§ 162.] 1. Every diphthong and contracted syllable is long.

2. Primitives give their own quantity to their derivatives.

3. A vowel coming before a vowel will be short.

4. Any vowel becomes long by Position, which two consonants follow, ıs *trīstis*: or which in the same word *j* follows or *x* or *z*: so *Ājax*, *āxis*, *māzon*.

5. A vowel, though short by its own power, is doubtful if a mute onsonant with a liquid after it follows; thus you will say rightly *lugŭbre* melos) a mournful melody, or *lugūbre*.

a. *Gn* always makes a long syllable, as *āgnus* and *īgnis*: and like vise *gm*; which *tēgmen* and *āgmen* shew.

ON THE QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

[§ 163.] 1. Most words of one syllable are long, as *mē*, *vēr*.

2. Words ending in A are long: *frustrā*, and *contrā*, and *parā*.

a. Except Accusative and Nominative Cases: (*Musă*) the Muse sings *carminā*) songs: the woods resound (*Amaryllidă*) Amaryllis.

3. E final is short: as *legĕ*, *timetĕ*, *carerĕ*.

[§ 162.] 1. Examples: heū; cŏĭgo = cōgo. Except prae before a vowel, as praĕeuntem.

2. Examples: pōmum, pōmarium; sălix, sălicetum. Exceptions are numerous, ıs hŏmo, hūmanus; nūbo, pronŭba.

3. Examples: principĭum, prŏhibe. (H is regarded as a breathing only, and ıot taken into account in Prosody.) Many Greek exceptions; as Chāonis, Aenēas, Clio, Myrtōus, Enÿo. Some Latin, as, diēi, Pompēi; aulāi, ēheu; fīo (except before er, as fĭeri); Common: fidĕi, Dĭana; Gen. in ĭus, as illĭus.

[§ 163.] 1. Exceptions: words in l, b, d, t, as vĕl, sŭb, ĭd, ĕt, stĕt. Also ĕs and its compounds, as, adĕs; quĕ, vĕ, nĕ interrogative; nĕc, ăn, ĭn, pĕr, tĕr, vĭr, cŏr, făc, fĕr, bĭs, ĭs, cĭs, quĭs.

2. *a*. Most Vocatives in ă are short; as Orestă; also ejă, ităquiă.

3. Except Cases of the 1st and 5th Declension, as Thisbē, speciē; their Derivatives, as quarē, hodiē; Imperatives Sing. of the 2nd Conj., as audē (but cavĕ is doubtful). Adverbs derived from Adjectives; as, miserē: also fermē, ferē, ohē, fămē.

4. Words in I are long; *dicī* and *plebī* and *dolī*.

5. Words in O are long; *virgō* and *multō* and *juvō*.

6. Words in U are long, so *tū* and *dictū* and *diū*.

7. Y final is short; thus poets have *chelў̆*, *Tiphў̆*.

8. Words in C are long, as *illīc*, except *doněc*.

9. Shorten words in L, D, T; thus *Hannibăl*, *illŭd*, *amavĕt*.

10. N final is short, *Ilĭŏn*, *agmĕn*, are instances.

11. R final is short; as *calcăr*, *amabitŭr*, *Hectŏr*.

12. Words in As are long; as *terrās* and *Menalcās*.

13. Words in Es are long; as *sedēs* and *viderēs*.

14. Is final is short; as *dicerĭs*, *utilĭs*, *ensĭs*.

a. The Oblique Cases Plural are excepted, as *terrīs*, *vobīs*; also the Second Person Singular, Present Tense, of the Fourth Conjugation, as *audīs*; the compounds of *vīs*, *sīs*; *malīs*, *nolīs*, and *velīs*.

15. Words in Os are long, as *ventōs* and *sacerdōs*.

16. Us final is short: *olŭs*, *intŭs*, *amamŭs*, are instances.

a. Except from this rule the contracted cases of the Fourth Declension, as *artūs*; and words which, increasing, have long penult; as *tellūs* and *incūs*, *juventūs* and *senectūs*.

17. Ys final is short: *chelў̆s*, *Othrў̆s*, *Erinў̆s*, are instances.

a. The custom of Authors governs Quantity, if a rule is wanting.

ON THE LAWS OF METRE.

[§ 164.] 2. A long syllable following a short is called Iambus (⏑ –): but if a long syllable goes before a short one, that is a Trochee (– ⏑): a Spondee will consist of two long syllables (– –); a Dactyl is formed by a long and two short syllables (– ⏑ ⏑).

ON SCANSION AND FIGURES OF SCANSION.

[§ 165.] 1. Scansion, which Figures adjust by various art, distributes a Verse according to Feet.

4. Exceptions are: Greek Datives and Vocatives, as Thyrsidĭ, Chlorĭ; also sicubĭ, necubĭ, nisĭ, quasĭ. But mihĭ, tibĭ, sibĭ, ubĭ, ibĭ, are doubtful.

5. The quantity of words in O, especially Verbs and Proper Names, fluctuates in different authors, and at various eras. Oblique Cases, and nearly all Adverbs in O, are long always.

10. Exceptions: many Greek words, as Hymēn, Ammōn.

11. Exceptions: many Greek words, as cratēr, aēr.

12. Exceptions: Greek cases of Third Declension, as Arcăs, lampadăs. Also anăs, *a duck*.

13. Exceptions: Greek Plurals increasing; as, Troadĕs: also penĕs; and some Singular Nouns which increase short, as segĕs.

14. *a*. Gratīs, forīs, are long: and Substantives which increase long, as Samnīs, Simoīs. Ris of the Future and Perfect in Verbs is doubtful, as fecerĭs.

15. Some Greek words in ŏs (ος) are short, as Argŏs, epŏs.

16. Some words from the Greek in ūs are long, as Sapphūs, Melampūs, Iesūs.

2. Synaloepha (Elision) will cut off a Vowel at the end of a word, if there be a vowel at the beginning of the next word: *Phyllid' am' int' alias*, for Phyllida amo ante alias.

3. Ecthlipsis will cut off a Vowel and *m* from the end, if there be a Vowel at the beginning of the next word: *O curas homin', O quant' est in rebus inane*, for hominum, quantum.

a. The last syllable of a verse is counted doubtful.

[§ 166.] I. The maple is in the woods; the spirited horse wins the Olympia. You will sing with your voice: up, lead dogs, unless you are white on the temples. A club strikes; a nail holds firm, and a key opens. To please a companion, put on, as a companion, affable manners. Comedians, seek the stage; messmates, seek supper. Consult teachers, so you consult for yourself. Often has his own desire injured one desirous of war. Songs are recited, while temples are dedicated to the Lord. He trusted not to untie, who severed the knot with a sword. The man leads a wife; the bride veils for a husband. This man trains dogs to take them out soon against boars. If you have not money, you are destitute, and eat not delicacies. The sea often deceives one who relies too much on the clear surface. The sun chases the clouds, and irrecoverable time flies. By what a man sins, by the same the same man is soon punished. It is a difficult labour under the weight of which I sink. The boy's forehead is smooth, but the girl's tongue light. Seek hares in plains, elegancies in books. I bid not a penny for him who bids not a penny for me. I had rather break with my jaw good apples than bad. Merchandise is sold, and reward comes gained by toil. Silvia strokes lovingly, while she milks, her gentle cow. You will have done a duty, if you have sent coins to the wretched. Strive, little boy, whoever shalt desire to shine. She who is red, smeared with paint, is forgetful of decency. He fell by base treachery, whom a friend killed. A mouth commands, but a bone is eaten with the mouth. It is a wife's part to bring forth and obey, a husband's to procure. Obedient children make parents rejoice. Play at ball: a javelin is hurled; *pīla* is a pillar. *Plăga* is for a net and a country; *plāga* for a blow. People are the citizens of a city: but poplar is a tree. The prow is the front (of a ship), the stern the hind part, and the keel the lowest. A bail promises, but a vessel contains food. A bail kindly assures the person, but a surety money only. If you wish to go quick, you have need to use all the sails.

II. Trust, but first see; he who trusts, and has not well seen, is deceived: see lest you be inveigled by trust. The same fortune makes partners; the same toil comrades; one duty colleagues: but school, play, the table, make dear companions. *Lira* is the furrow of a field: *lyra* (the lyre) touched utters notes. Let him not be secure, who is not safe from the enemy: you have banks by a river, shore by the sea. Men are old by time; ancients lived formerly: I feign what is not, and dissemble what is. Have you any news? Seek another: I know nothing. That chatterer relates what matters little. If perchance you sit anywhere, and the seat is convenient to you, sit in that seat: nor give up the place to me.

APPENDIX.

I. NOTES ON ETYMOLOGY.

I. NOUNS.

A. Substantives:—

First Declension.

a. The old Genitive ending **as** remains in familias: as, pater- (mater-) familias, *father* (*mother*) *of a family*.

b. The Gen. in **āī** is found in epic and comic poetry: as, aquāī.

c. Nouns which form Gen. Pl. in **um**, instead of arum, are (1) Patronymics: as, Aeneădes; (2) Some names of people, as Lapitha; (3) Compounds with -cola, -gena, as caelicola, terrigena; (4) Drachma, amphora.

d. Nouns like Dea, with Dat. Abl. Pl. **ābus**, are some of those which correspond to Masculine Nouns in *us*: as, filia, nata, liberta, mula, &c.

Second Declension.

a. Nouns declined like filius are genius, *familiar spirit*, and Latin Proper Names in ius, as Mercurius, Laelius.

b. The Gen. ĭī was contracted into **ī** by writers as late as Cicero, Virgil, and Horace. Ovid writes ĭī.

c. The Gen. Pl. in **um** for orum appears in (1) names of coins, weights, measures, and trades: as, numus, sestertius, medimnus, modius, talentum, faber. So, denûm talentûm; praefectus fabrûm. (2) Some names of people: as, Argīvus, Danaus. Poets often use it in words of short penult, as virûm for virorum.

d. Greek Nouns in **os**, *m.* and *f.*, have Acc. on or um: as, Delos; Acc. Delon or Delum. Nouns in **on**, *n.*, are like bellum in all but N. V. A. Sing.; as, Pelion.

e. Pelagus, *sea*, virus, *poison*, being Neuter, have Acc. and Voc. the same as Nom. Vulgus, *common people*, is Masculine or Neuter, and has -um or -us in Acc. These three Nouns have no Plural.

Third Declension.

a. Variant Consonant Nouns:

	Old man, m.	*Swine*, c.	*Ox* or *cow*, c.	*Jupiter*, m.	
(*a*) N. V.	Senex	Sus	Bos	Juppiter	
Acc.	Sen-	Su-	Bov-	Jov-	**em**
Gen.	Sen-	Su-	Bov-	Jov-	**ĭs**
Dat.	Sen-	Su-	Bov-	Jov-	**ī**
Abl.	Sen-	Su-	Bov-	Jov-	**ĕ**
N. V. A.	Sen-	Su-	Bov-	—	**ēs**
Gen.	Sen-	Su-	—	—	**um**
D. Abl.	Sen-	—	—	—	**ĭbus**

Sus has Dat. Abl. Pl. subus or suibus: bos has Gen. Pl. boum, Dat. Abl. bōbus or būbus.
Iter, *journey*, n.; Gen. itiner-is, etc.
Jecur, *liver*, n.; Gen. jecŏris or jecinŏr-is, etc.
Supellex, *furniture*, f.; Acc. supellectĭlem, etc.

(*b*) Parisyllable Nouns, declined like Consonant Nouns, are:
(1) the syncopated words, pater, mater, frater, accipiter;
(2) canis, juvenis, vates, volucris.

b. Variant I-Nouns:

(*a*) Imparisyllable I-Nouns, like dens, are: (1) Nouns with Stem ending in two Consonants, except lynx; (2) the words, glis, lis, mas, mus, nix (nivis), strix, with faux and vis.

(*b*) Nouns like tussis are: sitis, *thirst*, f.; amussis, *carpenter's rule*, f.; with a few more. Also names of rivers, as Tiberis, *Tiber*, m.; of towns, as Hispalis, *Seville*, f.

(*c*) Like clavis: classis, *fleet*, f.; febris, *fever*; messis, *harvest*; navis, *ship*, f.; puppis, *stern*, f., and a few others. Restis, *rope*, *f.*, Abl. *ĕ*; securis, *axe*, *f.*, Abl. *ī* only.

(*d*) Like canalis are Adjectival Nouns: as, aedilis, *m.*

(*e*) Like imber are: ūter, *bladder*; venter, *belly*, m.

c. Greek Consonant-Nouns form Acc. Sing. in *ă* or *em*; Acc. Plur. usually in *ăs*:

Gigas, *giant*, m.	gigant-	ă, em	ăs, ēs
Lampas, *torch*, f.	lampăd-	ă, em	ăs
Cratēr, *bowl*, m.	cratēr-	ă, em	ăs
Aēr, *air*, m.	aĕr-	ă, em	ăs
So, Naĭs, *Naiad*, f.	Naĭd-	ă, em	ăs, ēs
Herōs, *hero*, m.	herō-	ă, em	ăs, ēs
Erinys, *fury*, f.	Eriny-	ă	ăs

(*a*) Greek Nouns in *ĭs*, *ўs*, have Voc. *ĭ*, *ў*: as, Parĭ, Naĭ, Erinў.

(*b*) Greek I-Nouns have Nom. *ĭs*, f.; Voc. *ĭ*; Acc. *ĭn* or *im*; Gen. *ĕŏs*; Dat. Abl. *ī*: as, poēsis, *poetry*.

(*c*) The following are Heteroclite Masculine forms of Proper Names:

Nom.	Voc.	Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Abl.
1. éûs	eu	ĕum, ĕă	ĕī, ĕŏs	ĕī, éì, ĕō	ĕō
2. ēs, éûs	ē, eu	em, ēn, ĕă	ĭs, ĕī, ī, ĕŏs	ī	ĕ
3. ēs	ē, ēs	em, ēn	ĭs, ī	ī	ē, ĕ
4. ēs	ēs	em, ĕă	ĭs, ī	ī	ē
5. ēs	ē, ēs	em, ēn, ētă	ĭs, ētĭs	ī, ētī	ē, ētĕ

Examples.—1. Orpheus, Peleus. 2. Achilles, Ulixes (éûs). 3. Socrates, Thucydides. 4. Eteocles, Pericles. 5. Chremes, Thales.

Fourth Declension.

a. The Nouns which prefer **ŭbŭs** to **ĭbŭs** in Dat. Abl. Pl. are Disyllables in **cus**: as, arcus, *bow*: also, tribus, *tribe*; partus, *birth*; artus (Plur.), *limbs*; and veru, *spit*, N.

b. Poets often contract **ui** into **ū**: as, Parce metu.—Virg.

Fifth Declension.

a. Dies, *day*, and res, *thing*, are the only Nouns which form the increasing Cases in the Plural. Most have no Plural at all.

b. Poets contract **ei** into **ē**: as, Constantis juvenem fide.—Hor.

c. Fidei generally has *e* short: so rei, spei.

d. Respublica, *commonwealth*, declines both elements: Acc. rempublicam, Gen. reipublicae, etc. So jusjurandum, *oath*; Gen. jurisjurandi, etc.

Anomalous Substantives.

a. The chief Nouns, Plural only (besides those named § 25), are:

Decl. 1. *f.*	Deliciae, *delight*	Nonae, *Nones*
	Epulae, *feast*	Nundĭnae, *market-day*
	Exsequiae, *funeral rites*	Nuptiae, *bridal*
	Feriae, *holidays*	Reliquiae, *remnant*
	Insidiae, *ambush*	Tenebrae, *darkness*
	Kalendae, *Calends*	Athenae, *Athens*
	Minae, *threats*	Thebae, *Thebes*
Decl. 2.	Fasti, *annals*	Delphi
	Liberi, *children*	Gabii
Decl. 3.	Fores, *door*, f.	Moenia, *town walls*, n.
Decl. 4.	Artus, *limbs*, m.	Idus, *Ides*, f.

b. The most important Nouns which change meaning in Plural are:—

Decl. 1.	Copia, *plenty*, f.	Copiae, *forces*
Decl. 2.	Ludus, *play*, m.	Ludi, *public games*
	Castrum, *fort*, n.	Castra, *camp*

c. Add to Defective Nouns:

b. Mane, *morning*, Nom. Acc. Abl. Sing.

c. Fas, *right*; nefas, *wrong*; instar, *likeness*; nihil, *nothing*; necesse, *necessity*; opus, *need*: Nom. Acc. Sing.

d. Fors, *chance*; Abl. S. forte, *by chance.*

e. Sponte, *by one's own choice.*

B. Adjectives:—

a. Like melior are declined Comparatives; and vetus (veter-), *ancient.*

b. Like felix, Adjectives in ax, ix, ox, ux.

c. Like ingens, Adjectives in -ns, -rs, -ex; also locuples (locuplēt-), *wealthy*; par (păr-) with its compounds. Present Participles have Abl. S. ī, when used as Epithets; otherwise ĕ: with occasional exception.

d. Like acer, Adjectives of the Second Class in -cer, -ster; also celĕber, *renowned*; salūber, *healthful.*

e. Abl. S. ī, Gen. Pl. *um*; no Neut. Pl. Nom. Acc.: inop-s, *destitute*; vigil, *wakeful*; memor, *mindful*; degener, *degenerate*; uber, *fruitful*; anceps (ancipit-), *dubious*; praeceps (praecipit-), *headlong.*

f. Abl. S. ĕ, Gen. Pl. um; no Neut. Pl.: ales (alit-), *winged*; dives (divit-), *rich*; sospes (sospit-), *safe*; superstes (superstit-), *surviving*; compos (compot-), *possessing*; impos (impot-), *not possessing*; deses, reses (desid-, resid-), *inactive*; pauper, *poor*; puber, *of age.*

C. Pronouns :—

a. The suffixes -mĕt, -tĕ, -ptĕ, -cĕ, strengthen various Pronouns.

(*a*) Mĕt may be joined 1. to ego and its cases, except Gen. Plur.: as, egomet, *I myself*; 2. to the cases of tu, except Nom. Sing.: as, vosmet, *ye yourselves*; 3. to se and its cases, except sui: as, sibimet; 4. to the cases of suus: as, suamet facta.

(*b*) Tĕ is joined to tu : as tute; also, tutemet, *thou thyself*.

(*c*) Ptĕ is joined to the Abl. Sing. of the Possessive Pronouns: as, meopte consilio, *by my advice*.

(*d*) Cĕ is joined to the Demonstratives : as, huncce, hujusce. For illece, istece, are written illic, istic, which may be declined,

	Sing.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	istic	istaec	istuc	istice	istaece	istace
Acc.	istunc	istanc	istuc	istosce	istasce	istace
Gen.	istiusce, etc.			istorumce, etc.		

b. From the Possessives noster, vester, cujus, are derived:

Nostr-as (āt-), *of our country*. | Cuj-as (āt-), *of what country*.
Vestr-as (āt-), *of your country*.

D. Derived Nouns.

1. Substantiva Mobilia have a Feminine as well as a Masculine form:

a. Many O-Nouns have a Feminine A-Noun formed by changing *ŭs* into *ă*: agnus, *lamb*; asinus, *ass*; cervus, *stag*; deus, *god*; dominus, *lord*; equus, *horse*; famulus, *house-servant*; filius, *son*; libertus, *freedman*; lupus, *wolf*; maritus, *husband*; mulus, *mule*; natus, *son*; servus, *slave*; sponsus, *bridegroom*; ursus, *bear*, &c. Fem. agna, asina, &c.

Avus, *grandfather*, has avia; gallus, *cock*, gallina; caper, *he-goat*, capra and capella; puer, *boy*, puella; magister, minister, change *ter* into *tra*; poeta, *poet*, poetria; citharista, *harper*, citharistria. Taurus, *bull*, has vacca, *cow*; verna, *born-slave*, has ancilla, *maid-servant*.

b. Consonant-Nouns, verbal, in *tŏr, sŏr*, often have a Feminine *trix*: as ultor, *avenger*, ultrix; victor, *conqueror*, victrix; tonsor, *barber*, tonstrix. The forms in *trix* are often used as Adjectives: as, arma victricia, *victorious arms*.

c. Caupo, *vintner* (3), has Fem. copa (1); cliens, *client* (3), clienta (1); fidīcen, *lute-player* (3), fidicina (1); tibīcen, *flute-player* (3), tibīcina (1); leo, *lion* (3), leaena or lea (1).

d. Gentile names: as, Cres, *Cretan* (3), Cressa (1); Laco, *Lacedaemonian* (3), Lacaena (1); Libys, *Libyan* (3), Libyssa (1); Phoenix, *Phoenician* (3), Phoenissa (1); Thrax, *Thracian* (3), Threissa (1); Tros, *Trojan* (3) Troas (3), &c.

e. Nepos, *grandson* (3), has Fem. neptis (3); aries, *ram* (3), ovis, *ewe* (3); vir, *man* (2), mulier, *woman* (3); gener, *son in-law* (2), nurus (4); socer, *father-in-law* (2), socrus (4); senex, *old man* (3), anus (4).

Note. Nouns having only one Gender for both sexes are called Epicoena (ἐπίκοινα): as, passer, *sparrow*, m.; vulpes, *fox*, f. Sex must be expressed, if needful, by the words mas, femina: as, vulpes mas, *a dog-fox*.

2. Deminutives are Derived Nouns which express smallness. Deminutives are formed, chiefly, in

M.	F	N.
1. -ŭlus	-ŭla	-ŭlum
2. -ŏlus	-ŏla	-ŏlum
3. -ellus	-ella	-ellum
4. -cŭlus	-cŭla	-cŭlum
1. riv-ulus, *streamlet*	cist-ula, *small chest*	scut-ulum, *small shield*
2. fili-olus, *little son*	capre-ola, *young roe*	savi-olum, *kiss*
3. ag-ellus, *small field*	pat-ella, *saucer*	lab-ellum, *lip*
4. flos-culus, *floweret*	parti-cula, *particle*	munus-culum, *little present.*

Adjectives are also diminished: as, parvulus, pallidulus, misellus.

3. Patronymica are Personal Names, derived from a parent or ancestor.

Masc.

ădēs,	Aeneădes,	*son of*	Aeneas.
ĭdēs,	Tyndarĭdes	,,	Tyndarus.
īdēs,	Nelīdes	,,	Neleus.
ĭădēs	Thestiădes	,,	Thestius.

Fem.

ĭs,	Tyndaris,	*daughter of*	Tyndarus.
ēĭs,	Nelēis,	,,	Neleus.
ăs,	Thestias,	,,	Thestius.

And some others.

II. COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

A. Changes of Prepositions in Composition.

(1) A, ab=
A before *m*, *v*: as, amitto, avoco.
Abs before *c*, *t*: as, abscedo, absterreo.
As before *p*: as, asporto.
Au before *f*: as, aufero, aufugio. But abfui, abfore.
Ab before other letters: as, abeo, abdo.

(2) Ad remains before *b*, *d*, *h*, *j*, *m*, *v*, and vowels: as, adbibo, addo, adhibeo, adjicio, admitto, advoco, adeo.
becomes *a-* before *gn*, *sc*, *sp*: as, agnosco, ascendo, aspicio.
is assimilated before other letters: as, affero, appono, assisto.

(3) Con- (for cum), in-, are written com-, im-, before *p*, *b*, *m*: as, comparo, combibo, immitto.
are assimilated before *l*, *r*: as, colludo, irruo.
Con- becomes *co-* before vowels, *h*, and *gn*: as, coeo, coheres, cognosco. So ignosco. Note comĕdo, comburo.
Con-, in-, remain before other consonants: as, confero, induco.

(4) Ob, sub, are assimilated before *c*, *g*, *p*, *f*: as, occurro, oppono, suppono. So summoveo.
Except suscipio, suscĭto, suspendo, suspicio.
They remain before other letters.
Except ostendo, sustineo, sustollo, sustuli, surripio.
Note obsolesco, omitto.

(5) E, ex, are assimilated before *f*: as, effero.
Ex before vowels, *h*, *c*, *q*, *p*, *s*, *t*: as, exeo, exhibeo, excedo, exquiro, expello, exstruo,* extraho.
E before others: as, educo, evoco.

(6) Trans becomes *tra* before *d*, *j*, *n*: as, trado, trajicio, trano.
Tran- before *s*: as, transcribo.

(7) Dis- is assimilated before *f*: as, differo.
Remains before gutturals, labials, *t*, *j*, and *s* with vowel: as, discerpo, dispello, distraho, disjicio, dissero. But dijudico.
Di- before *s* with consonant, and before other consonants: as, distringo, diruo.
Not used before vowels. But dir-ibeo for dis-hibeo, dirĭmo for dis-imo.

(8) Re- se- add *d* in reddo, redeo, redhibeo, redĭmo, redoleo, seditio.

B. Vowel-Change in Composition.

a. Verbs weakening *a* into *e* in all forms of their compounds: (1) damnare, jactare, lactare, patrare, sacrare, tractare; (2) arcēre; (3) -candĕre, carpĕre, scandĕre, spargĕre, gradi, pati; (4) farcīre, partīri.

b. Verbs weakening *a* into *u* in all forms: (1) calcare, saltare; (3) quatĕre, (-cutĕre, -cussi, -cussum).

c. Verbs weakening *ae* into *ī* in all forms: (3) caedĕre (-cīdi, -cīsum), laedĕre (-līdĕre, -līsi, -lisum), quaerĕre (-quīrĕre, -quīsīvi, -quīsītum).

d. Verb weakening *au* into *ū* in all forms: (3) claudĕre (-clūdĕre, -clūsi, -clūsum).

e. Verb weakening *au* into *ō* in all forms: (3) plaudĕre (-plōdĕre, -plōsi, -plōsum). Exc. applaudĕre.

. Verbs weakening *a* into *i* in all forms: (2) habēre, latēre, placēre, tacēre; (3) sapĕre, statuĕre. Exc. complacēre, perplacēre.

g. Verbs which vary the Vowel in the forms of compounds:—

(*a*) *a* × *i*, *e*, *a*: (3) agĕre (-igĕre, -ēgi, -actum), frangĕre (-fringĕre, -frēgi, -fractum), pangĕre (-pingĕre, -pēgi, -pactum). Exc. circum-, peragĕre (-ēgi, -actum), cogĕre (co-ēgi, -actum), degĕre (dēgi), satagĕre (satēgi), repangĕre.

(*b*) *a* × *i*, *i*, *a*: (3) cadĕre (-cīdĕre, -cīdi), tangĕre (-tingĕre, -tĭgi, -tactum).

(*c*) *a* × *i*, *i*, *e*: (3) canĕre (-cinĕre, -cĭnui, -centum), rapĕre (-ripĕre, -ripŭi, -reptum).

(*d*) *a* × *i*, *e*, *e*: (3) capĕre (-cipĕre, -cēpi, -ceptum), facĕre (-ficĕre, -fēci, -fectum), jacĕre (-jĭcĕre, -jēci, -jectum), lacĕre (-licĕre, -lexi, -lectum). Exc. benefacĕre and many other compounds of facĕre (-făcĕre, -fēci, -factum), elicĕre, elicuī, elicĭtum.

(*e*) *a* × *i*, *i*, *u*: (4) salīre (-silīre, -silui, -sultum).

(*f*) *a* × *i*, *e*: (2) fatēri (-fitēri, -fessus); (3) apisci (-ipisci, -eptus).

* The Greek form *ec* (ἐκ) must be assumed when expecto, exul, &c., are written for ec-specto, ec-sul, &c.

(*g*) *e* × *i*, *i*, *e*: (2) tenēre (-tinēre, -tinui, -tentum).
(*h*) *e* × *i*, *e*, *e*: (2) sedēre (-sidēre, -sēdi, -sessum); (3) regĕre (-rigĕre, -rexi, -rectum), specĕre (-spicĕre, -spexi, -spectum), premĕre (-primĕre, -pressi, -pressum), emĕre (-imĕre, -ēmi, -emptum), legĕre (-ligĕre, -lēgi, -lectum). Exc. circumsedēre, pergĕre (perrexi, perrectum), surgĕre (surrexi, surrectum); co-, per-, inter- (-emĕre, -ēmi, -emptum). Also sublegĕre (-lēgi, -lectum), di-ligĕre, neg-, intellegĕre (-lexi, -lectum). These four last are from legĕre, *to choose*. The compounds of legĕre, *to read*, are per-, prae-, re- (-legĕre, -lēgi, -lectum).

EXAMPLES OF COMPOUND VERBS.

a. (1) Condemno, *condemn*
Objecto, *cast forward*
Delecto, *delight*
Impĕtro, *obtain* (by asking)
Consĕcro, *consecrate*
Obtrecto, *disparage*
(2) Coerceo, *confine*
(3) Incendo, *set on fire*
Excerpo, *cull*
Ascendo, *climb*
Dispergo, *disperse*
Progredior, *go forward*
Perpetior, *endure*
(4) Infercio, *stuff in*
Dispertior, *distribute*
b. (1) Proculco, *trample down*
Insulto, *insult, leap on*
(3) Decutio, *shake down*
c. (3) Occīdo, *kill*
Collīdo, *dash together*
Acquīro, *acquire*
d. (3) Inclūdo, *shut in*
e. (3) Explōdo, *stamp off*
f. (2) Prohibeo, *prohibit*
Displiceo, *displease*
Conticeo, *be silent*
(3) Desipio, *be silly*
Restituo, *restore*
g. (*a*) (3) Abĭgo, *drive away*
Refringo, *beat back*
Impingo, *knock against*
(*b*) (3) Occĭdo, *die*
Attingo, *reach*
(*c*) (3) Succĭno, *sing low*
Diripio, *tear asunder*
(*d*) (3) Decipio, *deceive*
Efficio, *effect*
Ejicio, *cast out*
Allicio, *allure*
(*e*) (4) Circumsilio, *leap round*
(*f*) (2) Diffiteor, *disown*
(3) Adipiscor, *acquire*
(*g*) (2) Abstineo, *abstain*
(*h*) (2) Praesideo, *preside*
(3) Porrĭgo, *stretch*
Transpicio, *look through*
Opprĭmo, *weigh down*
Exĭmo, *take out*
Collĭgo, *collect*
Dilĭgo, *love*
Perlĕgo, *read through*

III. CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS AND PARTICLES.

The Correlation of Pronouns and Particles should be carefully noted. The full series comprises—1 Interrogativum; 2 Demonstrativa; 3 Relativum; 4 Indefinita; 5 Universalia. These latter again contain *a.* Universalia Relativa et Indefinita; *b.* Univ. Alternativa; *c.* Univ. Distributiva et Inclusiva; *d.* Univ. Exclusiva. Alius and alter are Demonstrativa Partitiva. The dual series (uter, &c.) is marked *.

PRONOUNS.

1 Quis? qui? *who? what?*
*Uter? *which of two?*
2 Is, ille, iste, *that*
Hic, *this*
Idem, *the same*
Alius, *another*
*Alter, *the one, the other*
3 Qui, *who*

4 Quis, qui, *any one*
Aliquis, aliqui } *any one*
Quispiam }
Quisquam, ullus, *any at all*
Quidam, *a certain one*
*Alteruter, *one or other*
5 *a.* Quisquis, quicumque, *whosoever, whatsoever*
*Uteruter, utercumque, *whichsoever*
b. Quivis, quilibet, *any you will*
*Utervis, uterlibet, *which you will*
c. Quisque, *each* (of several)
Omnes, universi, *all*
*Uterque, *each* (of two)
*Ambo, *both*
d. Nemo, nullus, *no one, none*
*Neuter, *neither*

Adverbs of Place Where.

1 Ubi? *where?*
*Utrobi? *in which place?*
2 Ibi, illic, istic, *there*
Hic, *here*
Ibidem, *in the same place*
Alibi, *elsewhere*
3 Ubi, *where*
4 Ubi, alicubi, uspiam, *anywhere*
Usquam, *anywhere at all*
5 *a.* Ubiubi, ubicumque, *wheresoever*
b. Ubivis, ubilibet, *where you will*
c. Ubique, *everywhere*
*Utrobique, *in both places*
d. Nusquam, *nowhere*
*Neutrobi, *in neither place*

Adverbs of Place Whither.

1 Quo? *whither?*
*Utro? *to which place?*
2 Eo, illuc, istuc, *thither*
Huc, *hither*
Eodem, *to the same place*
Alio, *to another place*
3 Quo, *whither*
4 Quo, aliquo, quopiam, *anywhither*
Quoquam, *anywhither at all*
5 *a.* Quoquo, quocumque, *whithersoever*
b. Quovis, quolibet, *whither you will*
c. *Utroque, *to each place*
d. *Neutro, *to neither place.*

Adverbs of Place Whence.

1 Unde, *whence?*
2 Inde, illinc, istinc, *thence*
Hinc, *hence*
Indidem, *from the same side*
Aliunde, *from another side*
3 Unde, *whence*
4 Unde, alicunde, *from some side*
5 *a.* Undeunde, Undecumque *from whatever side*
b. Undevis, undelibet, *from what side you will*
c. Undique, *from every side*
*Utrinque, *from each side* †

Adverbs of Time When.

1 Quando? ubi? *when?*
2 Tum, tunc, *then*
Nunc, jam, *now*
Simul, *at the same time*
Alias, *at another time*
3 Quum, ubi, *when*
4 Quando, aliquando, *ever*
Unquam, *ever at all*
5 *a.* Quandocumque, *whensoever*
c. Quandoque, *at any time*
Semper, *always*
d. Nunquam, *never*

† So quā, *in what direction?* eā, hāc, aliā, quā, aliquā, quaquā, &c.
quorsum, *whitherward?* illorsum, aliquorsum, &c.
See the series of qualis, quantus, quot, § 38 (*g*).

Adverbs of Number.

1 Quoties? *how often?*
2 Toties, *so often*
3 Quoties, (*as often*) *as*
4 Aliquoties, *several times*
5 *a.* Quotiescumque, *how often soever*

Adverbs of Manner.

1 Quomodo? quemadmodum? ut? quam? *how?*
2 Ita, sic, tam, *so*
Item, itidem, *in like manner*
Aliter, secus, *otherwise*
3 Quomodo, quemadmodum, ut, *as*
Ac, atque, quam, *as, than*
5 *a.* Utut, utcumque, quamquam, *however*

Adverbs of Cause.

1 Cur? quare? *why? wherefore?*
2 Ideo, propterea, idcirco, *on that account*
3 Cur, quare, *why*; quod, quia, *because*

Correlation between a Demonstrative Adverb and a Conjunction appears also in

(1) Consecutive Construction:
2. Adeo, ita, sic, tam, tantum, &c., *so, so much, &c.*
3. Ut, ut non, ut nihil, ut nemo, &c., *that, &c.*
(2) Final Construction:
2. Idcirco, ideo, &c., *for the purpose, &c.*
3. Ut, ne, ut ne, ne quis, &c., *that, &c.*
(3) Temporal Construction:
2. Tum, tunc, *then*
3. Quum, *when*
2. Interea, *meantime*
3. Dum, *whilst*
2 Usque, eo, &c., *so long, &c.*
3 Dum, donec, quoad, *until*
(4) Conditional Construction:
2 Modo, tantum, tantummodo, *only, &c.*
3 Si, *if* (or omitting si)
(5) Concessive Construction:
2 Tamen, *yet, nevertheless*
3 Etsi, etiamsi, quamquam, quamvis, &c., *although, &c.*
(6) Comparative Construction:
2 Ita, perinde, proinde, similiter, itidem, *just so, &c.*
3 Quasi, ac si, ut si, &c., *as if, &c.*

IV. NUMERALS, MONEY, TIME.

A. Numerals.

a. The Cardinal Numbers are those on which the other Numerals *hinge* (cardo, *hinge*). Unus is used in the Plural with Substantives 'Plural only': as, una castra, *one camp*. But for higher numbers the Distributives are used: as, bina castra, *two camps*.

b. Ordinal Numerals denote numerical rank (ordo): primus, *first*, &c.

c. Distributive Numerals denote so many each or at each time: as, Sexageni caedunt singulos, *sixty men beat each* (*centurion*).—Tac. Poets often use them for the Cardinal Numbers.

d. Numeral Adverbs denote the *number of times* that anything happens or is done: semel, *once*; bis, *twice*; &c.

e. The General Rules for writing Compound Numbers, Cardinal, Ordinal, and Distributive, are as follows:—

(1) In Compound Numbers less than 20, either the smaller number without *et* precedes the larger, or the larger with *et* precedes the smaller: as, Nos Tyndaritani in septemdecim populis Siciliae numeramur, *we of Tyndaris are reckoned among the 17 nations of Sicily.*—Cic. Roscius fundos decem et tres reliquit, *Roscius left 13 farms.*—Cic. Licet dicere decimus et septimus pro septimus decimus.—Prisc.

(2) In Compound Numbers above 20, either the smaller number with *et* comes first, or the larger without *et*: as, Romulus septem et triginta regnavit annos, *Romulus reigned 37 years.*—Cic. Dentes triceni bini viris attribuuntur, *to men are assigned 32 teeth.*—Plin.

(3) In Compound Numbers above 100, the larger with or without *et* generally precedes the smaller: as, Leontinus Gorgias centum et septem complevit annos, *Gorgias of Leontini completed 107 years.*—Cic. Olympiade centesimā quartā-decimā Lysippus fuit, *Lysippus lived in the 114th Olympiad.*—Plin.

(4) The thousands are expressed either by prefixing the numerical Adverbs *bis*, *ter*, &c., to mille (chiefly in poetry), or by prefixing the Cardinal Numbers to millia. as, duo millia, tria millia, &c.

Millia is generally followed by a Genitive: but if smaller numbers intervene between millia and the Substantive, the latter will often stand in the same case as the Numeral: as, Tria millia et septingenti pedites ierunt, 3700 *infantry marched.*—Liv.

(5) The Numbers above 100,000 are expressed by the Numeral Adverbs joined to centum millia or centena millia, as stated in the following passage: Non erat apud antiquos numerus ultra centum millia; itaque et hodie multiplicantur haec, ut decies centena millia aut saepius dicantur.—Plin.

f. Unus is often used in Compound Numbers for primus.

g. The Numbers compounded with 8 and 9 are commonly expressed by a subtraction of duo and unus from the next multiple of 10: as, duodeviginti (duodevicesimus), 18; undeviginti (undevicesimus), 19; duodetriginta (duodetricesimus), 28; undetriginta (undetricesimus), 29; &c., &c.: duodecentum (duodecentesimus), 98; undecentum (undecentesimus), 99.

Roman Symbols.	*Cardinalia.*	*Ordinalia.*	*Distributiva.*	*Adverbia.*
I.	unus	primus	singuli	semel
II.	duo	secundus *or* alter	bini	bis
III.	tres	tertius	terni *or* trini	ter
IV.	quattuor	quartus	quaterni	quater
V.	quinque	quintus	quini	quinquies
VI.	sex	sextus	seni	sexies
VII.	septem	septimus	septeni	septies
VIII.	octo	octavus	octoni	octies
IX.	novem	nonus	noveni	novies
X.	decem	decimus	deni	decies
XI.	undecim	undecimus	undeni	undecies
XII.	duodecim	duodecimus	duodeni	duodecies
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus	terni deni	tredecies

Roman Symbols.	*Cardinalia.*	*Ordinalia.*	*Distributiva.*	*Adverbia.*
XVIII.	duodeviginti	duodevicesimus	duodeviceni	duodevicies
XIX.	undeviginti	undevicesimus	undeviceni	undevicies
XX.	viginti	vicesimus	viceni	vicies
XXI.	unus et viginti *or* viginti unus	primus et vicesimus *or* vicesimus primus	viceni singuli	semel et vicies
XXX.	triginta	trigesimus	triceni	tricies
C.	centum	centesimus	centeni	centies
CC.	ducenti	ducentesimus	duceni	ducenties
D *or* Iↀ.	quingenti	quingentesimus	quingeni	quingenties
M *or* CIↀ.	mille	millesimus	singula millia	millies
MM.	duo millia	bis millesimus	bina millia	bis millies

B. Money.

a. The As, or pound of 12 ounces (unciae), was thus divided:

Uncia	= 1 oz. or $\frac{1}{12}$ of the As.			Septunx	= 7 oz. or $\frac{7}{12}$ of the As.		
Sextans	= 2 ,, $\frac{1}{6}$,,			Bes	= 8 ,, $\frac{2}{3}$,,		
Quadrans	= 3 ,, $\frac{1}{4}$,,			Dodrans	= 9 ,, $\frac{3}{4}$,,		
Triens	= 4 ,, $\frac{1}{3}$,,			Dextans	= 10 ,, $\frac{5}{6}$,,		
Quincunx	= 5 ,, $\frac{5}{12}$,,			Deunx	= 11 ,, $\frac{11}{12}$,,		
Semissis	= 6 ,, $\frac{1}{2}$,,						

b. Unciae usurae = $\frac{1}{12}$ per cent. per month = 1 per cent. per annum.

Sextantes	= $\frac{1}{6}$	,,	,,	= 2	,,	,,	
Quadrantes	= $\frac{1}{4}$	,,	,,	= 3	,,	,,	
etc.		etc.			etc.		

Asses usurae = 1 per cent. per month = 12 per cent. per annum.

Asses usurae were also called centesimae; and binae centesimae = 2 per cent. per month = 24 per cent., &c. Unciarium fenus was 1 uncia yearly per as = $8\frac{1}{3}$ per cent. per annum.

c. Heres ex asse . . . means heir to the whole estate.
Heres ex deunce . . ,, heir to $\frac{11}{12}$ of the estate.
Heres ex semisse, or . .
Heres ex dimidia parte . . ,, heir to $\frac{1}{2}$ of the estate.
etc. etc.

d. The Sestertius (Numus), or Sesterce, was a silver coin equal to $2\frac{1}{2}$ asses, being $\frac{1}{4}$ of the Denarius (coin of 10 asses). Its symbol is HS.

The Sestertium (=1000 sestertii) was not a coin, but a sum, and is only used in the Plural Number.

Sestertia, in the Plural (also represented by HS.) joined with the Cardinal or Distributive Numbers, denotes so many 1000 numi sestertii.

The Numeral Adverbs, joined with (or understanding) sestertii (Gen. Sing.), sestertium numum, or HS., denote so many 100,000 numi sestertii:

Thus HS.X = Sestertii decem, 10 sesterces.
$\overline{\text{HS.X}}$ = Sestertia decem, 10,000 sesterces.
$\overline{\overline{\text{HS.X}}}$ = Sestertium decies, 1,000,000 sesterces.

C. Time.—The Roman Calendar.

Every Roman month had three chief days: Kalendae (Calends), Nonae (Nones), Idus (Ides). The Calends were always the 1st day of

the month; the Nones were usually on the 5th; the Ides on the 13th; but in four months the Nones were on the 7th, the Ides on the 15th.

March, May, July, October; these are they
Make Nones the 7th, Ides the 15th day.

These three days, the Calends, Nones, and Ides, were taken as points, from which the other days were counted backwards. That is, the Romans did not say, such and such a day *after*, &c., but such and such a day *before* the Calends, or Nones, or Ides. The rules are: (1) For days before the Calends subtract the day of the month from the number of days in the month increased by two; (2) For days before the Nones or Ides subtract from the day on which they fall, increased by one.

Examples.—May 31, Pridie Kalendas Junias.
„ 30, Ante diem tertium (a.d. III.) Kal. Jun.
„ 29, „ „ quartum (a.d. IV.) Kal. Jun.
„ 11, „ „ quintum (a.d. V.) Id. Mai.
„ 2, „ „ sextum (a.d. VI.) Non. Mai.

Days of English Month.	Martius, Maius, Julius, October, 31 Days.	Januarius, Augustus, December, 31 Days.	Aprilis, Junius, September, November, 30 Days.	Februarius, 28 Days—in every fourth Year 29.
1	Kalendis	Kalendis	Kalendis	Kalendis
2	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
3	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
4	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
5	a.d. III.	Nonis	Nonis	Nonis
6	Pridie	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.
7	Nonis	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.
8	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.
9	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.
10	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
11	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
12	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
13	a.d. III.	Idibus	Idibus	Idibus
14	Pridie	a.d. XIX.	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVI.
15	Idibus	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XV.
16	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XIV.
17	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIII.
18	a.d. XV.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XII.
19	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XI.
20	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XII.	a.d. X.
21	a.d. XII.	a.d. XII.	a.d. XI.	a.d. IX.
22	a.d. XI.	a.d. XI.	a.d. X.	a.d. VIII.
23	a.d. X.	a.d. X.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VII.
24	a.d. IX.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.
25	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.
26	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.
27	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. V.	a.d. III.
28	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. IV.	Pridie
29	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. III.	
30	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	Pridie	
31	Pridie	Pridie		

Nonas: Mart. Mai. Jul. Oct.
Idus: Mart. Mai. Jul. Oct.
Kalendas: Apr. Jun. Aug. Nov.
Nonas: Jan. Apr. Jun. Aug. Sept. Nov. Dec.
Idus: Jan. Apr. Jun. Aug. Sept. Nov. Dec.
Kalendas: Feb. Mart. Mai. Jul. Sept. Oct. Jan.
Nonas: Feb. Mart. Mai. Jul. Sept. Oct. Dec.
Idus: Feb. Mart. Mai. Jul. Sept. Oct. Dec.
Kalendas: Mart.

[In Leap-year, Feb. 24th (a.d. VI. Kal. Mart.) was twice reckoned,—hence this day was called DIES BISSEXTUS, and leap-year itself ANNUS BISSEXTUS.]

V. ABBREVIATIONS.

(1) Praenomina.

A. Aulus	K. Kaeso	Q. Quintus
C. } Gaius	L. Lucius	S. (Sex.) Sextus
G. } Gaius	M. Marcus	Ser. Servius
Cn. } Gnaeus	M'. Manius	Sp. Spurius
Gn. } Gnaeus	Mam. Mamercus	T. Titus
D. Decimus	P. Publius	Ti. (Tib.) Tiberius.

Note.—A Roman of distinction had at least three names: the Praenomen, individual name; the Nomen, name showing the Gens or clan; and the Cognomen, surname showing the Familia or family. Thus, Lucius Junius Brutus expressed Lucius of the Gens Junia and Familia Brutorum. To these were sometimes added one or more Agnomina, titles either of honour (as Africanus, Macedonicus, Magnus, &c.), or expressing that a person had been adopted from another Gens, as Aemilianus, applied to the younger Scipio Africanus, who was the son of L. Paulus Aemilius, but adopted by a Scipio. The full name of the emperor Augustus (originally an Octavius) after he had been adopted by his uncle's will and adorned by the Senate with a title of honour, was Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus Augustus.

(2) Varia.

A. D. Ante diem	HS. Sestertius, Sestertium	P. R. Populus Romanus
A. U. C. Anno urbis conditae	Id. Idus	Pl. Plebis
Aed. Aedilis	Imp. Imperator	Proc. Proconsul
Cal. (Kal.) Calendae	L. Libra	S. Senatus
Cos. Consul	LL. Dupondius	S. P. Q. R. Senatus Populusque Romanus
Coss. Consules	Non. Nonae	S. C. Senatusconsultum
D. Divus	O. M. Optimus Maximus	S. D. P. Salutem dicit plurimam
Des. Designatus	P. C. Patres (et) Conscripti	Tr. Tribunus.
Eq. Rom. Eques Romanus	P. M. Pontifex Maximus	
F. Filius		

II. NOTES ON SYNTAX.

I. Agreement. § 88–92. § 156–160.

A. The Subject (§ 88) may be any Noun-term, § 87.

B. (1) The term Adjective (§ 89) includes Participles and Adjectival Pronouns.

(2) An Adjective agrees as Epithet with a Substantive: as Complement with any Noun-term.

(3) Adjectives are used as Substantives (§ 156): 1. In the Masc. Sing. and Pl., *man* or *men* being implied: as, amicus, *a friend*; sapiens, *a wise man*; stultus, *a fool*; boni, *good men*; multi, *many*; plerique, *most*. 2. In the Neut. Sing. abstractly: as, Honestum et utile, *morality and expediency*.—Cic. Triste lupus stabulis, *the wolf is a bane to the stalls*.—Virg. 3. In the Neut. Pl., *things* being implied: as, multa, *many things*; omnia, *all things*.

C. The term Substantive (§ 90) includes all Noun-terms. A Substantive may be in Apposition to any Noun-term, as Appositive Epithet or Complement. An Apposite usually agrees in Number also with its Noun, sometimes in Gender: as, Usus magister egregius.—Plin. Vita rustica parsimoniae magistra est.—Cic.

D. 1. The Relative (§ 91) may refer to any Noun-term of any Person, as ego, nos, tu, vos, &c. 2. It may be explained as standing between two Noun-terms, with the former of which it agrees in Gender, Number, and Person, with the latter in Case: as,

(1) Vir *quem* virum vides rex est (Full Form).
(2) Vir *quem* ..... vides rex est (Usual Form).
(3) ... *quem* virum vides rex est.
(4) ... *quem* ..... vides rex est.

E. Figures varying Agreement (§ 158–160) are:—

1. Ellipsis, which omits words: (1) Pronouns, as Aiunt, they *say*: (2) Substantives, as Falernum, *Falernian* (vinum, *wine*), gelida (aqua) *cold water*; Ad Junonis, *to Juno's* (templum, *temple*). (3) Verbs, especially the Copula est, sunt. See § 158.

The opposite of Ellipsis is Emphasis, which throws stress on words: as, Ego reges ejeci, vos tyrannos introducitis, *I expelled kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.*—Liv.

2. Attraction, which removes Agreement from the usual word to some other: as, Amantium irae amoris integratio est, *the quarrels of lovers are the renewal of love.*—Ter.; where est agrees with the Complement integratio, not with the Subject irae.

3. Synesis, which occurs when words have one Gender or Number in form, another in meaning, and when the construction is made to agree with the meaning: as, Capita conjurationis securi percussi sunt, *the heads of the conspiracy were decapitated.*—Liv. Pars epulis onerant mensas, *part load the tables with viands.*—Virg. Singular Nouns with Plural sense, as pars, juventus, turba, multitudo, nobilitas, plebs, populus, civitas, vulgus, etc., are called Collectiva, Collective Nouns, or Nouns of Multitude.

F. 1. A Composite Subject (§ 92) is one which contains two or more Noun-terms. The rule holds good, whether the Nouns are linked by Conjunctions, or without Conjunctions (by Asyndeton), or united by the Preposition cum. So, Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt, *Quirinus with his brother Remus will give laws.*—Virg.

2. A Singular Verb may be used with a Composite Subject when the Nouns form one notion: as, Senatus populusque intelligit.—Cic.

3. The Verb may agree with one of the Nouns, and be understood with the others: as, Convicta est Messalina et Silius, *Messalina was convicted, and Silius.*—Tac.

4. As the first Person is prior to the second, and the second to the third, so the Masculine Gender is held in Grammar superior to the Feminine. (1. 2.)

G. Upon Impersonal Verbs, see § 157, also § 75, &c.

II. Cases of Subject and Complement. § 93–94.

A. It is commonly stated that 'Copulative Verbs, Finite or Infinite, have the same Case after as before them;' but this is true only of an Attributive or Appositive Complement. The Complement may be a Phrase in an Oblique Case with or without a Preposition, or it may be an Adverb, and then the rule here cited will fail. Rule § 93 (2) may be given for every Nominative Complement; and the use of the term Complement always implies that the Verb of the sentence in question is either esse or some other Copulative Verb, Finite or Infinite. See § 87 D. Rules § 94 refer to the important construction of Accusative-and-Infinitive in Enunciatio Obliqua, on which see X. (1).

B. The Verb sum may be completely Predicative, not Copulative, if it denotes absolute existence: as, Jam segetes sunt, ubi Troja fuit, *now corn* is, *where Troy* was.—Ov.

III. The Accusative Case. § 95–103.

A. When the Verb is Transitive (§ 96), the construction is often without sense until a word is added to express that on which the Verb acts. This is called the Object (or Nearer Object), and stands in the Accusative Case. Thus Romulus condidit, *Romulus founded*, is incomplete in sense until we add Romam, *Rome*. Transitive Verbs may be called Quid-Verbs. How to change a Transitive Active Sentence into Passive form, see XIV. *E.* 1.

B. (1) Transitive Verbs are sometimes used intransitively; as, Jam verterat fortuna, *fortune had now turned*.—Liv. (2) More often Intransitive Verbs become transitive: as, Flet necem fili, *he weeps for his son's death*. (3) The Compound of an Intransitive Verb is often transitive: as, Hostes urbem circumsedent, *the enemies surround the city*. (4) Passive Verbs used reflexively sometimes become transitive, like Deponents: as, Exuitur cornua, *she puts off her horns*.—Ov. Hence such constructions as Nodo sinus collecta fluentes, *having gathered up in a knot her flowing folds*.—Virg.

C. The Verbs which take double Accusative (thing and person) (§ 98) are doceo (and its compounds), rogo, interrogo, orc, exoro, posco, flagito, percontor, and, in Horace, lacesso. Sometimes celo, *conceal*. They may be called Quem-Quid Verbs. In Passive construction the Accusative of the thing remains: Quid tu docearis a me litteras? *why should you be taught letters by me?*

D. Factitive or Quid-Quale Verbs (§ 99) are such as may be said *to make* (facere) a thing to be of a certain character, by deed, word, or thought: as, (1) facio, efficio, reddo, praesto, creo, lego, eligo, &c.; (2) dico, voco, memoro, praedico, nomino, nuncupo, declaro, usurpo, appello, saluto, &c.; (3) aestimo, numero, credo, existimo, puto, duco, judico, habeo, censeo, cognosco, invenio, reperio, deprehendo, &c., &c. They are the Active forms of those which in the Passive are Copulative Verbs. In their construction esse may be mentally supplied between the Object and Complement. Factitive Construction in the Passive becomes Copulative: Fis dea nobis, Fortuna: A Romulo urbs sua Roma vocata est.

E. The Accusative of Respect or Nearer Definition (100) is seldom used in prose, except when it contains Pronominal or semi-adverbial expressions: as, Illud doleo; Hoc laetor; Cetera assentior Crasso, *in other things I agree with Crassus.*—Cic.

F. (1) Many Grammarians deem the original force of the Accusative Case to be, that it marks the limit or object of motion. § 101. (2) The Prepositions in, ad, are generally used by prose writers, if motion to other places than towns or small islands is mentioned.

IV. The Dative Case. § 104–109.

A. Words whose sense is incomplete without reference to a Recipient (105) are called Trajective. Thus carus, *dear*, necessarily implies, *dear to some one*; dare, *to give*, necessarily implies not only a thing given, but a person to whom it is given. Trajective words take a Dative of this object of reference. Verbs of this sort, if they take a Dative only (as parco, faveo, irascor, &c.), are purely Trajective or Cui-Verbs: if they take an Accusative also, they are Trajective-Transitive, or Cui-Quid Verbs, as do, narro, spondeo, &c.

B. The fundamental notion of the Dative (§ 106) seems to be Nearness, with its opposite Remoteness. The First Class, then, of Trajective words is composed of those which contain the ideas of *nearness* and *remoteness*, *presence* and *absence*, *affinity* and *non-affinity*, *custom* and *strangeness*, *fitness* and *unfitness*, *likeness* and *unlikeness*, *agreement* and *disagreement*, *union* and *disunion*, *comparison* and *contrast*. Next, *showing and being shown* is the bringing near or being brought near to the eye, ear, or (generally) to the mind. Herein we include the Second Class, words of *utterance* and *silence*, *narration* and *concealment*, *affirmation* and *denial*, *evidence* and *obscurity*, *persuasion* and *dissuasion*. We are hence led on to the Third Class, a large body of words which express application or exhibition with the attendant notion of *favour* or *disfavour*. These comprise words which express *profit* and *harm*, *kindness* and *unkindness*, *bounty* and *stint*, *indulgence* and *grudging*, *help* and *obstruction*, *pleasing* and *displeasing*, *pardon* and *resentment*, *flattery* and *reviling*, *blessing* and *malediction*, *compliance* and *resistance*, *promise* and *menace*, *gift*, *loan*, *present*, *payment*, *dedication*, and *refusal*; *delivery* and *withdrawal*; *faith* and *infidelity*, *trust* and *distrust*, *lawfulness* and *unlawfulness*, *ease* and *difficulty*. There are yet a few words, which share something of the character of both the two last-mentioned classes, and may conveniently form a Fourth Class. These are words which express *rule* and *subservience*, *command* and *obedience*.

C. The reason why many Verbs compounded with Particles (106 *a.*) become Trajective, is, that the Particle confers upon them one or other of the notions enumerated above: most frequently that of Nearness.

D. The reason why a Dativus Commodi vel Incommodi (107) may be attached to almost any predication, is evidently because almost any action or state may be attended with something of *advantage* or *disadvantage* to some one; it may be *for* or *against* some one's interest; it may be in some way *interesting* to some one. Thus nubere means 'to take the bridal veil,' and a bride is said, 'nubere viro,' 'to take the veil *for* her husband,' that is, 'to marry him.' Vacare means 'to be void,' or 'empty:' hence, 'to be disengaged *for*,' that is, 'to have leisure *for*:'

as, vacare philosophiae. Such constructions are far-fetched examples of the Trajectiva Gratiae. Here, too, may be ranked the Dativus Ethicus, the Dative with sum and its compounds, with Participles, Gerunds, &c. and perhaps the Dativus Rei pro Complemento.

E. Some Adjectives in the classes named prefer the construction of ad with Accusative to that of the Dative: such are natus, aptus, utilis, idoneus, paratus, rudis, &c. as, Ad laudem et ad decus nati sumus, *we are born to praise and glory.*—Cic. Others use in, erga, adversus: as, Acer in hostem, *spirited against the foe.*—Virg. Benignus erga te fui, *I was kind towards you.*—Plaut. Communis, proprius, affinis, similis, par, and some other Adjectives, take a Dative or a Genitive Case.

F. Some Verbs belonging in sense to the classes named above (*B*) are Quid-Verbs, not Cui-Verbs, and take Accusative and not Dative: as, juvo, jubeo, laedo, rego, guberno. Multos castra juvant, *the camp delights many.* Animum rege, *rule the temper.*—Hor. Others use Dative or Accusative: as, tempero, moderor. The construction of Verbs varies considerably, owing to the use of Prepositions and other causes. Thus we find donare alicui munus and donare aliquem munere, invidere alicui, invidere rem alicui, invidere re aliquem. These varieties must be observed in reading.

G. The English Prepositions chiefly used in rendering the Latin Dative are *to* and *for.* But after some Adjectives and Verbs (iratus, succenseo, &c.) *with* must be used; after some Verbs (disto, aufero, &c.), *from*; after many Compound Verbs, *upon*, *into*, or *against.* Others, as parco, placeo, displiceo, medeor, &c., are rendered without introducing an English Preposition.

H. The Dative after a Finite Passive Verb is rare: as, Non intelligor ulli, *I am not understood by anybody.*—Ov. So is the Dative after a Verb of motion: as, It clamor caelo, *a cry ascends to heaven.*—Virg.

V. The Ablative Case. § 110–125.

A. When the Ablative stands without a Latin Preposition, it is rendered with the help of various English Prepositions; namely, I. Cause, *by, for, from, through, with, at.* II. Instrument, *with, by.* III. Manner: *in, with, by.* IV. Condition: *with, in, upon.* V. Quality: *of, with.* VI. Respect, *in, by, with.* VII. Value or Price: *at, for, of, with.* VIII. Measure: *by*, or no Preposition. IX. Matter: *of, in, with, from, upon, for*, or no Preposition. X. Time: *at, in, within*, or no Preposition. XI. *A.* Place by which: *by, along, upon, through.* *B.* Place where: *at, in, upon* (humi). *G.* Place from which: *from.* XII. (See Prepositions). XIII. Separation and Origin: *from, of.* XIV. Thing compared: *than.*

B. The use of the Simple Ablative in most of these meanings is varied considerably by the introduction of Latin Prepositions. Thus Cause may be expressed by ab, de, ex, prae; also by ob, per, propter, with Accusative. Agent requires a, ab; while Instrument is without Preposition. Manner without an Epithet requires 'cum,' (except in a few phrases, such as, vi, fraude, jure, injuriā, ritu, silentio, arte, ordine, &c.). Thus, *I speak with grief*, or *he writes with diligence*, cannot be rendered dolore loquor, diligentiā scribit, but cum dolore loquor (or dolens loquor), cum diligentiā scribit (or diligenter scribit).

If an Epithet is joined to this Ablative, the Preposition is often used, often omitted; and observation must determine the choice of construction: as, Cato summā contentione dixit, *Cato spoke with the utmost energy.*—Cic. Magnā cum curā atque diligentiā scripsit, *he wrote with great care and diligence.*—Cic.

C. The Case of Quality, whether Ablative or Genitive, requires an Epithet.

D. The Ablative of Price is used with Verbs and Adjectives implying *sale, purchase, dearness, cheapness, cost,* &c. Muto, *I change,* may have Accusative of what is left, and Ablative of what is taken, or (in poetry) the converse. Thus mutare urbem exilio, and mutare urbe exilium may equally mean '*to quit the city and go into banishment.*' Pretio is often dropt: as, magno, *dear*; parvo, vili, *cheap.*

E. The Ablative of Measure defines Verbs and Adjectives of Extent and Degree, especially Comparative and Superlative Words: and for this purpose in particular are used the Pronominal Ablatives hoc, eo, quo, altero, tanto, quanto, aliquanto: also paulo, multo, duplo, dimidio, nihilo, nimio, &c.: as, Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt, *the more they have, the more they desire.*

F. The use of Prepositions in defining Time (§ 120) is frequent: as, Sol binas in singulis annis reversiones facit, *the sun makes two turns in each year.*—Cic. De die, *before the close of day.* De nocte, *before the close of night.* De multā nocte, *long before the close of night.* Sub vesperum, *on the approach of evening.* Diem ex die expecto, *I wait day after day.* In is usually prefixed to an Ablative of time when a numeral Adverb is annexed: as, Quidam oves in anno bis tondent, *some shear sheep twice a year.*—Varr.

G. 1. Generally *Place where* (§ 121 B.) is expressed with in: as, In portu navigo, *I am sailing in harbour.*—Sen. In is omitted in certain phrases: as, loco (*in the stead*), multis locis, pluribus locis, &c.; hoc libro, alio libro, &c.; terrā marique; or where totus is used: as, totā Asiā, *in all Asia,* dextrā (parte), *on the right hand,* laevā, sinistrā, *on the left hand.* The poets are more free in the omission: as, Silvisque agrisque viisque corpora foeda jacent, *in forests and fields and roads, lie revolting corpses.*—Ov. But this licence needs discrimination. When a work is quoted *in* is used: as, in Iliade Homeri; in Andriā Terentii; in Gorgiā Platonis; but when the author only is cited, *apud*; apud Homerum; apud Terentium; apud Platonem (*in Homer,* &c.).

2. That the seeming Genitive, Romae, Corinthi, &c., (§ 121 B. *a.*) is not strictly such, was perceived by ancient Grammarians, who call it an Adverb. But if we notice that it ends in *i,* Romai (Romae), militiai (militiae) Mileti, domi, humi, belli; and compare the old forms of place in the Third Declension ending in *i,* ruri, Lacedaemoni—Nep.; Carthagini—Liv.; Tiburi—Cic., &c.; we cannot doubt the original existence in the Latin language, as in the Sanskrit, of a Locative Case ending in *i* Singular, in *s* Plural.

3. Prepositions are much used with names of towns: as, In Epheso est. In Ephesum abii. Ex Epheso huc litteras misi, *I sent a letter to this place from Ephesus.*—Plaut. Has litteras a Brundisio dedit, *this letter he dated from Brundisium.*—Cic.

H. The usage of Verbs and Participles of Separation and Origin (§ 123) must be carefully observed, some of them taking or omitting the Preposition in prose: as, arceo, cedo, moveo, pello, prohibeo, summoveo, removeo: others requiring a Preposition in prose, but not in poetry; as, alieno, discedo, disjungo, dispello, disto, divello, repello, reporto, rejicio, segrego, secerno, separo, &c. The chief Participles are natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, editus, oriundus, &c.

K. 1. The Case of the word with which the Ablative is compared (§ 124) is much oftener a Nominative than an Accusative. In comparison with other cases quam must be used: as, Nulli flebilior quam tibi, Vergili, *to none more a cause of weeping than to thee, Vergilius.*—Hor. Flagiti magis nos pudet quam erroris, *we are more ashamed of the crime than of the blunder.*—Cic. And, in general, for the sake of perspicuity: as, Segnius homines bona quam mala sentiunt, *men feel blessings less keenly than evils.*—Liv.

2. After plus, amplius, minus, an ellipse of quam often occurs before Numerals: as, Romani paulo plus sexcenti ceciderunt, *of the Romans rather more than* 600 *fell.*—Liv. Unus is omitted: as, Quinctius tecum plus annum vixit, *Quinctius lived with you more than a year.*—Cic.

L. 1. The Ablative Absolute (§ 125) being an abridged Clause, the Participle may often be transformed into a Finite Verb with Conjunction. Thus, in the example, Regibus exactis = postquam reges exacti sunt.

2. A common instance of Substantive put Absolutely with Substantive is that of *consule* or *consulibus*: as, Caninio consule scito neminem prandisse, *in the consulship of Caninius you must know that nobody dined.*—Cic.

VI. The Genitive Case. § 126–136.

A. 1. The Genitive is Subjective when it limits a Noun like an Attribute; Objective when it limits it like an Object. It is the same thing to say, Sullanus exercitus, or Sullae exercitus, *the army of Sulla*; flamen Martialis, or flamen Martis, *the priest of Mars*; on the other hand, cupido pecuniae is nearly the same as cupere pecuniam. But Adjectives are even used for the Objective Genitive: as, bellum regium for bellum contra regem; timor externus for timor exterorum. So the Possessive Pronouns; as, Desiderium vestrum ferre non possum, *I cannot bear the want of you.*—Cic. '*Native of a place*' is expressed by an Adjective derived from the place: as, Dionysius Halicarnasseus, for Dionysius Halicarnassi natus, *Dionysius of Halicarnassus.*

2. The Possessive Genitive is rendered in English either by *of* or the Genitive in *'s*: as, Philippi filius, '*son of Philip*,' or '*Philip's son.*'

3. Instar (an undeclined Substantive meaning *likeness*) stands (with a Genitive) in apposition to a Substantive: as, Instar montis equum, *a horse resembling a mountain.*—Virg.

B. (1) Some suppose interest to be for inter rem est, rēfert for rem fert, and mea, &c., to be corruptions of meam, &c. (§ 129). (2) These Verbs may be qualified by the Genitives of Value, magni, parvi, pluris, tanti, quanti: as, Utriusque nostrum magni interest ut te videam, *it is of great importance to both of us that I see you.*—Cic.

C. 1. The Genitivus Rei Distributae (§ 130) and Genitivus Rei Defensae (§ 131) are so far the same, as that each is a divided whole; but the former is numerically or quotatively divided, the latter quantitatively: the former is Plural unless it be a Collective Noun; the latter usually, but not always, Singular. The Partitive words which distribute the former Genitive are (α) Pronominals: as, alius, alter, uter, uterque, utervis, uterlibet, ullus, nullus, nemo, plerique, multi, pauci, ceteri, reliqui, solus, qui, quis, quicumque, quisquis, quisque, unusquisque, tot, quot, quotcumque, quotusquisque, quisnam, quisquam, aliquis, quidam, quispiam, &c. (β) Numerals, Cardinal and Ordinal: unus, primus: duo, secundus, &c.; also princeps, medius. (γ) Comparative and Superlative Adjectives; the former distributing two things: as, Major Neronum; or one class into two parts: as, Avium loquaciores, *the noisier sort of birds.*—Plin. Also Superlative Adverbs, in which Gender cannot appear. (δ) Any Adjective, Participle, or Substantive which can imply a distributive meaning: as, Sancte deorum; lecti juvenum; piscium feminae.

2. Partitives are sometimes attracted in Gender from the Genitive to the Subject: as, Indus est omnium fluminum maximus, *the Indus is the largest of all rivers.*—Cic. Or varied by Synesis: as Dulcissime rerum, *dearest of beings.*—Hor.

3. A Collective Noun is distributed: as, Plato totius Graeciae doctissimus fuit, *Plato was the most learned man of all Greece.*—Cic.

4. This Genitive forms a Complement: as, Fies nobilium tu quoque fontium, *thou too shalt become one of the renowned fountains.*—Hor.

5. Adverbs of Place, ubi, quo, eo, nusquam, &c. are Partitively used with the Genitives gentium, locorum, terrarum, &c.: as, Nusquam gentium, *nowhere in the world.*—Liv.

6. Primus, ultimus, summus, imus, extremus, and other like Adjectives are used as Epithets with Partitive force: as, Primā luce summus mons a Labieno tenebatur, *at break of day the top of the mountain was occupied by Labienus.*—Caes.

D. Among Quantitative words governing a Genitive (§ 131) are, nihil, satis, affatim, abunde, nimis, partim, minus, minimum, parum, aliud, id, illud, hoc, idem, quod, quid, aliquid, quidquid, quidquam, multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, aliquantum, nimium, dimidium. They are usually rendered in English as agreeing with the thing measured: as, nimium pecuniae (*too much money*); nihil mali (*no evil*). They may also be followed by the Genitive of an Adjective of the Second Declension; but an Adjective of the Third is commonly put in the same Case with the word of Quantity: as, Ne quid falsi dicere audeas, ne quid veri non audeas, *you should dare to say nothing false, nothing true not dare to say.*—Cic. Nec viget quicquam simile aut secundum, *and nothing exists like or in second rank.*—Hor.

E. Among poetic Genitives (§ 135) are these: (1) Cause: as, Laudabat leti juvenem, *he praised the young man for his death.* (2) Respect: as, O seri studiorum, *O late in your studies.* (3) Dominion: as, Daunus agrestium regnavit populorum, *Daunus ruled over rustic tribes,* &c.

VII. The Verb Infinite. §140–144.

A. The Infinitive used in direct predication (§ 140, 2.) is called the Historic Infinitive. It appears in poetry as well as in prose narrative, (*a*) in passages descriptive of strong emotion; (*b*) where various actions take place simultaneously or in immediate sequence; (*c*) in actions interrupted, and from time to time repeated. It is analogous to the ellipse of the Copula; in fact, both constructions occur together: as, Ceterum facies totius negoti varia, incerta, foeda atque miserabilis; dispersi a suis pars cedere, alii insequi: neque signa neque ordines observare: ubi quemque periculum ceperat, ibi resistere ac propulsare; arma, tela, equi, viri, hostes, cives permixti; nihil consilio neque imperio agi; fors omnia regere, *now the aspect of the whole affair was confused, indecisive, shocking, and pitiable. Parties scattered from their comrades were some retiring, others advancing; observing neither standards nor ranks; where peril encountered each man, there was he resisting and repelling; arms, darts, steeds, men, foes, countrymen were interminglèd; nothing was proceeding by counsel or command; chance directed all.*—Sall. This Infinitive is not Present, but Imperfect.

B. 1. The Infinitive is called Prolative when it carries on the construction of Verbs which express *ability, desire, custom, beginning, ceasing, seeming, being thought, being said,* &c.; as, possum, queo, nequeo, debeo, volo, nolo, malo, aveo, cupio, gestio, amo, soleo, coepi, incipio, statuo, pergo, conor, meditor, paro, cesso, desino, videor, putor, credor, feror, dicor, trador, memoror, &c. Among these Verbs, those which are Copulative (videor, credor, existimor, putor, dicor, narror, feror, trador, reperior, arguor, &c.) are used personally with a Prolative Infinitive rather than impersonally with Accusative and Infinitive. Thus it is better Latin to say, Videtur errasse Cicero, than Videtur errasse Ciceronem; Dicitur Homerus caecus fuisse, than Dicitur Homerum caecum fuisse. The Participle Passive is often found in poetry after such Verbs with an ellipse of esse: as Fertur Prometheus coactus, &c., *Prometheus is said to have been compelled,* &c.—Hor. The law of this construction should be carefully observed.

2. The construction of a Prolative Infinitive with Adjectives abounds in poetry, especially lyric; as, Audax omnia perpeti, *bold to endure all things.*—Hor. Fruges consumere nati, *born to consume the fruits.*—Hor. In the best prose it is used but with few words; as, Paratus, assuetus, &c.; but Tacitus adopts it freely.

C. Under the Dative Gerund (§ 141, 3.) note the phrase, non esse solvendo, *to be insolvent*; and the use of the Dative Gerund and Gerundive in describing functions of office; as, Triumviri agro dando, *triumvirs for assigning land,* &c.

D. The Transitive Gerund is not always attracted (§ 143): as, Efferor studio patres vestros videndi, *I am rapt with the desire of seeing your sires.*—Cic. Especially when a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective is the Object: as, Pars honesti versatur in tribuendo suum cuique, *one branch of morality lies in giving each his own.*—Cic. Parva non contemnendo majores nostri maximam hanc rem fecerunt, *by not despising small things our ancestors made this commonwealth very great.*—Liv. But, as a general rule, the Gerundive attraction is used.

VIII. The Reflexive Pronouns. § 145.

A. Personal and Possessive Pronouns of the First and Second Persons may be used reflexively; that is, they may be referred to a Subject of *their own* Person. But se and suus differ from the rest, inasmuch as they cannot be used unless there be a Noun of their own (the Third) Person, expressed or understood, to which they are referred. Although we can say amat me, *he loves me*; amat te, *he loves thee*; we cannot say, amo se, amas se, but amo eum, *I love him*; amas eum, *thou lovest him*; not culpo suum factum, but culpo ejus factum, *I blame his deed.*

B. The reference of *se* or *suus* to the Object is not ambiguous (*a*) if the Pronoun is an adjunct to the Subject, as in the first and third examples under § 145, *a.*; (*b*) if the Subject is not of the Third Person, as in the second example; (*c*) if the context shows that the Pronoun cannot be referred to the Grammatical Subject: as, Scipio suas res Syracusanis restituit, *Scipio restored to the Syracusans their property.*—Liv. To suppose that Scipio *restored his own* property to the Syracusans would be absurd. The Object to which se, suus, are referred, usually precedes: except the Distributive Pronoun quisque, which, if so used, generally follows them. So, Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam, *his own character moulds each man's fortune.*—Nep. When se, suus, would be improper, in some places is used the Pronoun is, in others the Pronoun ipse: as, Chilius te rogat, et ego ejus rogatu, *Chilius requests you and I at his request.*—Cic. Caesar milites incusavit cur de suā virtute et de ipsius diligentiā desperarent, *Cæsar reproachfully asked his troops why they despaired of their own valour and of his carefulness.*—Caes.

IX. The Conjunctive Mood. § 148.

The Indicative Mood states absolutely, the Conjunctive contingently. The Conjunctive is called *pure* when it is in the predication of a principal Sentence. Its *pure* uses are various:

(1) Potential:	as,	Ita amicos pares, *thus you may get friends.*
		Dixerit aliquis, *some one may say.*
(2) Conditional:	,,	Velim tecum esse, *I should wish to be with you.*
		Crederes victos, *you would have supposed them vanquished.*
(3) Concessive:	,,	Age dicat, *well, he may speak.*
		Fuerit sapiens, *suppose he were wise.*
(4) Optative:	,,	Valeant cives mei, *may my countrymen flourish!*
		Ne vivam si, &c., *may I not live if*, &c.
(5) Dubitative:	,,	Faveas tu hosti? *must you favor a foe?*
		Quid faciam? *what am I to do?*
(6) Hortative:	,,	Imitemur bonos, *Let us imitate the good.*
		Rem tuam curares, *you should have been minding your own business.*

X. Substantival Clauses, and Dependence on Oratio Obliqua. § 149–151.

I. Every Simple Sentence is either (1) a Statement (Enuncia), (2) a Command or Request (Petitio), or (3) a Question (Interrogatio). As (1) Psittacus loquitur, *the parrot speaks.* (2) Loquere,

psittace, *speak, parrot.* (3) Loquiturne psittacus? *does the parrot speak?* When any of these is a Principal Sentence, it is said to be Direct (Recta Oratio); when it is a dependent Substantival Clause, it is said to be Oblique (Obliqua Oratio).

A Substantival Clause is one which may take the place of a Substantive (as Subject, Object, or Apposite), being (1) Oblique Enunciation, (2) Oblique Petition, (3) Oblique Interrogation.

(1) The principal form which Oblique Enunciation takes is the Accusative and Infinitive (§ 94.), which is either Subject of the Copula est or an Impersonal Verb, or Object of one of the Verba Sentiendi et Declarandi. Grammatical writers sometimes have this construction alone in view when they use the term Oblique Oration: but incorrectly; for it is but one, though the most important, form of Oblique Oration. As, Facinus est vinciri civem Romanum, *it is a crime for a Roman citizen to be put in chains.*—Cic. Thales dixit aquam esse initium rerum, *Thales said that water is the origin of the universe.*—Cic.

Constructions used for the Accusative and Infinitive are:

a. Ut, with Subjunctive, in Oblique Enunciation, implies *consequence, expediency, duty, necessity, custom, law,* &c. Quod, with Indicative (usually), implies *fact*: as,

Mea rēfert ut venias, *It is important to me that you come.*

Necesse est (ut) venias, *You must needs come.*

Oportet (ut) venias, *You ought to come.*

Expedit / Utile est } ut civitates sua jura habeant.

It is expedient (useful) that the states have their rights.

Gaudemus / Gratum est } quod civitates sua jura habent.

We are glad that the states have their rights.

b. Verbs of *hoping* and *promising* prefer the Accusative with Future Infinitive: as,

Spero te venturum (esse), *I hope that you will come.*

Pollicetur se venturum (esse), *he promises that he will come.*

c. After expressions of *fearing, danger,* &c., ne means *lest,* ut *lest not*: as,

Metuo ne redeat, *I fear lest he return* (=*I fear he will return*).

Metuo ut redeat, *I fear lest he return not* (=*I fear he will not return*).

d. Interrogatio Infinitiva (or Accusative and Infinitive interrogatively used with ellipse of Finite Verb) asks an indignant question: as,

Mene incepto desistere? *What, I abandon my design?*

(2) Oblique Petition is formed when ut, ne, depend on Verbs of *entreating, commanding, forbidding, allowing, persuading, caring, endeavouring, effecting, preventing,* &c.: as, Oro ut venias; Cura ut valeas: Vide ne facias; Enitendum est ut vincamus, ne vincamus, &c. Fieri non potest ut veniam, *I cannot possibly come.* Ut and ne are often omitted: as, Precor reddas; fac venias; cave dicas; licet abeas, &c.

(3) Oblique Interrogation is formed by Interrogatives dependent on Verbs of *stating, enquiring,* &c. § 149. Here too an Interrogative sometimes falls out: as, Interrogatur, tria pauca sint anne multa, *It is questioned whether three things are few or many.*—Cic.

II. A Clause dependent on Oblique Oration may be called Suboblique (Subobliqua). A Clause is virtually Suboblique (Subobliquae potestatis), if it depends on Oratio Recta so constituted as to be virtually Oblique, that is, containing the statement of somebody's thought, judgment, or declaration. Thus, in the Compound Sentence, 'Laudat Africanum Panaetius, quod fuerit abstinens,' the Principal Sentence, Laudat, &c., is virtually Oblique, and the Clause, quod, &c., virtually Suboblique: the sense being *Panaetius praises Africanus* (=*says* Africanus is to be praised) *because he was self-denying.* Hence fuerit is Subjunctive, although the Conjunction quod is one of the Second Class, to which the Indicative is appropriate.

XI. Adverbial Clauses.

A. An Adverbial Clause modifies the Principal Sentence like an Adverb, and is introduced by Conjunctions (1) Consecutive, (2) Final, (3) Causal, (4) Temporal, (5) Conditional, (6) Concessive, (7) Comparative. Lists of these Conjunctions appear § 152.

Examples of Subjunctive in Adverbial Clauses:

(1) Non tam amens est ut eat, *He is not so mad as to go.*
Non ita amens fuit ut iret, *He was not so mad as to go.*
Adeo prudens est ut non ierit, *He is so prudent that he went not.*
Tam catus erat ut nihil diceret, *He was so shrewd as to say nothing.*
Tam catus fuit ut nihil dixerit, *He was so shrewd that he said nothing.*
Tantum abest ut Romae sit, ut in Britanniam ierit, *He is so far from being at Rome, that he has gone to Britain.*
Tantum abfuit ut Romae esset, ut in Britanniam ivisset, *He was so far from being at Rome, that he had gone to Britain.*

(2) Edo ut vivam, *I eat that I may live.*
Vivebant ut ederent, *They lived that they might eat.*
Obedi rationi ne servias appetitui, *obey reason, that you may not be a slave to appetite.*

(3) Quae cum ita sint, ibo, *Since this is the case, I will go.*
Quae cum ita essent, ivi, *Since this was the case, I went.*

(4) Expecta dum veniam, *Wait till I come.*
Expectabam dum venirent, *I was waiting till they came.*

(5) Oderint dum metuant, *Let them hate provided they fear.*

(6) Ut peccet, carus est, *Though he sin, he is dear.*
Quamvis peccasset, carus erat, *Though he had sinned, he was dear.*

(7) Obtundis tanquam surdus sim, *You stun me as if I was deaf.*
Obtundebas quasi surdus essem, *You stunned me as though I were deaf.*

B. Conditional Sentences require special notice.

A Conditional Sentence (si, *if*; nisi, *unless*) contains a Protasis or Conditional Clause, and an Apodosis (Statement or Principal Sentence): as, *If you like* (Protasis), *you shall go* (Apodosis).

Its main forms in Latin are these:

I. Si peccas doles,
If you sin you grieve.
Si peccabis dolebis,
If you sin you will grieve.
} Here both Verbs are Indicative, and no suggestion is made of probability or improbability (Sumptio Dati).

II. Si pecces doleas,
If you were to sin now, you would grieve; or, *If you shall sin, you will grieve.*
} Here both Verbs are Conjunctive Present, and there is a suggestion of probability (Sumptio Dandi).

III. Si peccares, doleres,
Were you to sin, you would grieve.
Si peccasses, doluisses,
If you had sinned, you would have grieved.
Si peccasses, doleres,
If you had sinned, you would (now) *be grieving.*
} Here both Verbs are Conjunctive, either Imperfect or Pluperfect; and an imaginary case is suggested, which has not actually occurred (Sumptio Ficti).

In Oblique Oration these Sentences become:

I. II. Aio te, si pecces, { dolere (for doles). / doliturum esse.

III. Aiebam te, si peccares, doliturum esse.
— — si peccasses, doliturum fuisse.

XII. Adjectival Clauses.

A. These are related to the Principal Sentence like Adjectives, and introduced by the Relative or one of its Particles. See Rule, § 150.

B. Quominus, quin, require special notice.

(1) Quominus (=ut eo minus) follows Verbs and Phrases expressing *impediment*. (2) Quin (=qui non) follows Negative expressions and Interrogations. (3) Quin (=quod non) follows Negative and Interrogative expressions of *doubt*, *prevention*, *prohibition*, &c. Examples:—

(1) Nihil obstat quominus eam, *Nothing stops me from going.*
Per me stetit quominus ires, *I was the cause of your not going.*

(2) Quis est quin fleat? *Who is there but weeps?*
Nemo fuit quin fleret, *There was none but wept.*

(3) Nihil dubito quin gaudeant, *I have no doubt they rejoice.*
Nihil dubitabam quin gauderent, *I had no doubt they rejoiced.*
Quid causae est quin gaudeant? *What reason is there why they shall not rejoice?*

XIII. Consecution of Tenses.

A. Examples of Consecution (see those in XI., XII.).

Quaero
Quaeram
} quid agas, quid egeris, quid acturus sis.

Quaerebam
Quaesivi
Quaesiveram
} quid ageres, quid egisses, quid acturus esses.

B. If the Perfect is Present-Past (*I have inquired*), it is strictly a Primary Tense, and should have Primary Consecution; but Cicero generally constructs it, even in that sense, with Historic Consecution.

XIV. Additamenta Memorabilia.

A. Negatives:—

a. Non, haud, deny: nē prohibits. Haud is chiefly used with Adjectives and Adverbs: as, res haud dubia; haud temere, &c. And with a few Verbs: as, haud scio, haud dubito.

b. Ne . . . quidem has the emphatic word or words between the Particles: as, Ne tu quidem, *not even you*. Either the Verb precedes with another Negative: as, Non praetereundum est ne id quidem, *even that should not be passed over*.—Cic.; or it follows without one: as, Ne ad Catonem quidem provocabo, *I will not appeal even to Cato*.—Cic. Nēdum, with Subjunctive, shows that something is denied a fortiori, when compared with what was denied before. See § 147.

c. The Pronominal words quisquam, ullus, unquam, usquam, &c., are used with a Negative or Dubitative Particle: as, non, haud, si, num, &c., quisquam, ullus, &c. The Negative is contained in nemo (ne-homo), nullus (ne ullus), nunquam, nusquam, nequicquam, nequaquam, &c.

d. In Negative Consecutive Clauses are used ut non, ut nemo, ut nullus, ut nunquam, ut nusquam, &c.; but in Final Clauses ne, ut ne, ne quis, ut ne quis, ne quando, ut ne quando, ne quo, ut ne quo, &c.

e. Non quod (generally), non quo, non quin (always), take a Subjunctive.

f. For et nemo, write nec quisquam; for et nihil, neque quicquam; for et nullus, neque ullus; for et nunquam, neque unquam, &c.; for aio non, nego.

g. Neque (nec) is used for et non, except when the negative emphasis falls on a single word: as, Quaestio difficilis est et non profutura.

h. Non nihil, *something*; nihil non, *everything*; non nunquam, *sometimes*; nunquam non, *always*, &c.; non potui non ire, *I could not but go*.

B. Single and Double Questions.

a. Single: Nonnĕ expects the answer *Yes*; num, the answer *No*; -nĕ is indifferent; ăn often implies *surprise*, expecting a negative answer.

b. Double. The forms are:

utrum	. . . . .	an (*or*)
num	. . . . .	an (*or*)
-ne	. . . . .	an (*or*)
—	. . . . .	an, anne (*or*).

A negation in the second member is annon or necne.

a. Qualis est tua mens? potesne dicere? *What sort of thing is your mind? can you tell?*—Cic.

An tu me tristem esse putas? *Do you think I am downcast?*—Plaut.

Num negare audes? *Do you venture to deny?*—Cic.

Canis nonne similis lupo est? *Is not a dog like a wolf?*—Cic.

b. Haec utrum abundantis an egentis signa sunt? *Are these the tokens of one who abounds or lacks?*—Cic.

Num duas habetis patrias an est illa patria communis? *Have you two countries, or is this your common country?*—Cic.

Romamne venio an hic maneo an Arpinum fugio? *Do I come to Rome, or stay here, or flee to Arpinum?*—Cic.

Quaeram justum sit necne poëma, *I will enquire whether it be a true poem or not.*—Hor.

C. Prepositions:

a. Tenus follows its Case, which is often a Genitive: as, Tauro tenus, *as far as Mount Taurus*; nutricum tenus, *as far as the breasts.*

b. Ante, circa, circum, circiter, citra, extra, infra, intra, juxta, pone, post, prope, supra, ultra, clam, coram, palam, super, subter, may be used as Adverbs.

c. Among idiomatic Phrases formed by Prepositions, observe: (1) Ad: ad tempus, *for a time*; ad multam noctem, *till late at night*; ad unum, *to a man*; ad tibiam canere, *to sing to the flute*; ad hoc, *furthermore*; ad extremum, *at the last*; ad summum, *in fine*; ad verbum, *word for word*; ad unguem, *to a nicety*; ad amussim, *accurately*; ad decem annos, *ten years hence*; servi ad remum, *slaves for rowing*; ad judices, *before the judges*; insignis ad laudem, *eminent in renown*; nihil ad te, *nothing compared with you.* (2) Per: per noctem, *during the night*; per litteras, *by letter*; per jocum, *in jest*; per deos te oro, *I pray you by the gods*; per me licet, *I give leave*; res per se expetenda, *a thing in itself desirable.* (3) A, ab: a fronte, *in the van*; a tergo, *in the rear*; a millibus passuum duobus, *two miles off*; prope abest a mari, *he is near the sea*; philosophus a Platone, *a Platonic philosopher*; hoc a me facit, *this is on my side*; proximus a rege, *next to the king*; ab animo aeger sum, *I am sick at heart*; a doctrinâ instructus, *well informed*; servus a pedibus, *a footman*; a manu, *an amanuensis.* (4) De: de nocte, *in the night*; de die, *in the daytime*; de meo, *from my own purse*; de marmore, *of marble*; de more, *according to custom*; de industriâ, *on purpose*; de novo, *afresh*; justis de causis, *for good reasons*; de Parthis triumphavit, *he triumphed over the Parthians.* (5) E, ex: diem ex die, *day after day*; ex pedibus laborat, *he has the gout in his feet*; e republica, *for the good of the state*; heres ex asse, *universal heir*; ex improviso, *by surprise*; ex tempore, *offhand*; e vestigio, *suddenly*; e regione Massiliae, *opposite Marseilles.* (6) Prae: prae me beatus es, *you are happy compared with me*; prae dolore tacet, *he is silent from grief.* (7) Pro: pro foribus, *before the door*; pro certo, *for a fact*; pro viribus, *according to one's powers*; pro tuâ humanitate, *such is your courtesy*; pro re natâ, *in existing circumstances*; pro eo ac potui, *according to my ability.* (8) In: *α.* frumentum binis assibus in modium, *corn at two asses a peck*; dormire in lucem, *to sleep till daylight*; vocat me ad cenam in hortos in proximum diem, *he invites me to dine the next day in his pleasure-grounds*; in hunc modum locutus est, *he spoke in this wise*; in praesens, *for the time being*; in horas, *from hour to hour*; in aeternum, *for ever*; in universum, *generally*; in vicem, *in turns.* *β.* in incerto, *in doubt*; in praesenti, *at this moment*; is in aere meo est, *he is in my debt*; hic non modo in aere alieno nullo, sed in suis rebus multis est, *this man is not only out of debt, but has much ready money of his own*; filius in manu patris, *a son in his father's power*; in tuâ manu hoc est, *this is in your power.*

D. Participles:

a. The Participles are important elements in Latin, as in Greek, construction. But the Latin language is less rich in Participles than the Greek.

b. A Participle is the Attribute of one that acts, or has acted, or will act; of one that is being acted on, or has been acted on, or will be acted on: to which we must add, of one that is meet for being acted on. A Greek Verb regularly and fully conjugated has Participles (including the Verbal in τέος) representing all these categories; but Latin Verbs with Active and Passive Conjugation have the first, third, fifth, and seventh (the Present Act., Future Act., Perfect Pass., and Gerundive) Participles, but want the second, fourth, and sixth, that is, the Perfect Active, Present Pass., and Future Pass. Participles. For the Gerundive must not be regarded as Future, though it may in some places contain the notion of future time.

c. Deponent Verbs Intransitive have three Participles: Present and Future, both of which are Active in form and sense, and Perfect, which is Passive in form, but Active in sense: as, labor, labens, lapsurus, lapsus. To these, Transitive Deponents add the Gerundive in dus: as, patior, patiens, passurus, passus, patiendus.

d. The want of a Perfect Participle Act., in Active Verbs, is supplied in Latin either by the Finite Verb Active, with Relative or Particle, or by an Ablative Absolute Passive: as, Tarquinium regem qui non tulerim, Sicinium feram? *Having refused to endure Tarquin as king, shall I endure Sicinius?*—Liv. Alexander, quum interemisset Clitum, vix a se manus abstinuit, *Alexander, having slain Clitus, hardly refrained from suicide.*—Cic. Pompeius, captis Hierosolymis, victor ex illo fano nihil attigit, *Pompeius, having taken Jerusalem, in the very flush of victory, meddled with nothing belonging to that temple.*—Cic.

e. The want of a Present Participle Passive is supplied by the Finite Passive Verb with Relative or Particle: as, Pueri, qui—quum—dum docentur, discunt = Greek οἱ παῖδες διδασκόμενοι μανθάνουσι, *Children by being taught learn.* Rarely the Perf. Participle takes a Present Passive sense: as, Sperata victoria (Liv.) = victoria quae speratur.

f. A Future Participle Passive is not often used even in Greek. In Latin the Finite Verb with Relative stands for it: as, Grata superveniet quae non sperabitur hora, *Welcome will arrive the hour that shall be never hoped for.*—Hor.

g. The Perfect Participles of some Deponent and Semi-Deponent Verbs are occasionally found in a Present Active sense: as, ausus, fisus, diffisus, gavisus, ratus, solitus, usus, veritus: as, Cæsar, veritus ne noctu hostes profugerent, duas legiones in armis excubare jubet, *Cæsar, fearing the enemy would escape in the night, ordered two legions to keep watch under arms.*—Cæs. See § 62 Note.

h. Many Participles are used as mere Adjectives: as, negligens, patiens, sapiens, doctus, venerandus tremendus, &c. Many appear as

Substantives. Such are, amans, adolescens, sponsus; nupta, sponsa, coeptum, dictum, factum, praeceptum, &c. The nouns, *man, men, thing,* &c., are frequently to be understood with Participles: as, Jacet corpus dormientis ut mortui, *The body of a sleeping person often lies as of one dead.*—Cic. Grande locuturi nebulas Helicone legunto, *They that would utter a sublime strain must cull mists from Helicon.*—Pers. Male parta male dilabuntur, *Ill gotten, ill go.*—Cic. Beatos duco, qui aut faciunt scribenda, aut scribunt loquenda, *I deem them happy, who either do things fit to be written, or write things fit to be spoken.*—Plin. See § 142. Also § 107 *d.*

E. Active and Passive Construction:

a. When an Active Transitive Sentence is changed into Passive Construction, the Object becomes Subject, and the Subject becomes Ablative of the Agent: as,

Act. Egregie consul rem gessit.
Pass. Egregie ab consule res gesta est.
The consul conducted the affair excellently.—Liv.

b. When an Active Intransitive Sentence is changed into Passive Construction, that Construction is Impersonal; the Subject becoming Ablative of the Agent; as,

Act. Hostes constanter pugnabant.
Pass. Ab hostibus constanter pugnabatur.
The enemy fought steadily.—Caes.

c. If the Active Verb had a Genitive, Dative, or Ablative Case with it, the Passive Construction retains that Case: as,

Act. Medicinae nos indigemus.
Pass. Medicinae a nobis indigetur.
We need medicine.—Cic.

Act. Mihi isti nocere non possunt.
Pass. Mihi ab istis noceri non potest.
They cannot hurt me.—Cic.

Act. Litibus et jurgiis supersedere vos aequum est.
Pass. Litibus et jurgiis supersederi aequum est.
It is fair for you to abandon strife and wrangling.—Liv.

(*a*) The Ablative of the Agent, like a Pronoun Subject, is often understood in the Impersonal Construction; as, Itur in antiquam silvam, *They go into an ancient forest.*—Virg. Nunc est bibendum, *Now we must drink.*—Hor.

(*b*) Hence it appears that Passive Verbs govern the same Cases as Active Verbs, except only the Accusative of the Object.

(*c*) Quasi-Passive Verbs (§ 72) have the construction of Verbs Passive; as, Testis ab reo fustibus vapulavit, *The witness was beaten with cudgels by the defendant.*—Quint. Malo a cive spoliari quam ab hoste venire, *I would rather be stript by a citizen, than be sold by a foe.*—Quint.

F. Summary of Impersonal Construction:

a. Case-construction.

(1) Accusative of Person with Genitive of Thing:
Piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret. § 134.

(2) Accusative of the Object:
Oportet, taedet, piget, pudet, paenitet, decet, dedecet, delectat, juvat, fallit, fugit, are Transitive.

(3) Dative:
Libet, licet, liquet, patet, accidit, contingit, convenit, evenit, expedit, placet, restat, vacat, opus est, necesse est, are Trajective.

(4) *Ad* with Accusative: attinet, pertinet, conducit.

b. Subject-construction.

(1) Verb-noun Infinitive:
Oportet, opus est, taedet, piget, pudet, paenitet, decet, dedecet, libet, licet, attinet, pertinet, contingit, convenit, expedit, placet, praestat, restat, vacat, delectat, juvat, interest, rēfert, necesse est.

(2) Infinitive Clause (Enunciatio Obliqua):
Oportet, opus est, decet, dedecet, licet, liquet, patet, attinet, pertinet, accidit, contingit, convenit, placet, praestat, restat, juvat, fallit, fugit, interest, rēfert, constat, necesse est.

(3) Subjunctive Clause with *ut* (for Infinitive Clause):
Oportet, opus est, licet, accidit, contingit, evenit, est, fit, expedit, placet, praestat, restat, interest, rēfert, necesse est.

(4) Subjunctive Clause omitting *ut*:
Oportet, licet, necesse est.

(5) Indicative Clause with *quod* (for Infinitive Clause):
Piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret, accidit, delectat, juvat, fallit, fugit, interest, rēfert.

(6) Subject included in the meaning of the Verb:
Piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret: also Impersonals implying changes of season and weather: as, pluit, tonat, fulgurat, &c., and Passive Impersonals. See *E. b. c.*

(*a*) The following Deponent Perfects are occasionally used:
Pertaesum est; pigitum est: puditum est; miseritum est; libitum est; licitum est; placitum est.

(*b*) The following Verbs joined with Impersonal Infinitives become Impersonal: coepit, debet, desinit, potest, solet, incipit: as, Pigere eum facti coepit, *he began to be sorry for the act.*—Just. Perveniri ad summa, nisi ex principiis, non potest, *the highest things cannot be reached, except from principles.*—Quint.

G. Summary of Rules for Time, Place, and Space:

a. (1) Time *during* which:
Accusative; Accus. with *per*; rarely Ablative.

(2) Time *at* which, *within* which, &c.:
Ablative; Prepositions with their Cases.

b. (1) Place *where*:
Ablative with *in*; Accusative with *ad* or *apud*.

But if town, small island, or domus, humus, militia, bellum, rus:
Singular Case in *ae*, *i* or *e*; Plural Case in *is* or *ibus*, without a Preposition: as, Romae, militiae, Corinthi, domi, humi, belli, ruri, Tibure, Athenis, Gadibus, &c.

(2) Place *whither*:
Accusative with *ad* or *in*.

But if town, small island, domus, rus, &c.:
Accusative without Preposition usually.

(3) Place *whence*:
Ablative with *ab* or *ex*.

But if town, small island, domus, rus, &c.:
Ablative without Preposition usually.

c. (1) Space intervening:
Accusative; as, Aberam ab Amano iter unius diei, *I was one day's journey from Amanus.*—Cic.
Or Ablative of Measure; as, Aesculapii templum quinque millibus passuum ab Epidauro distat, *the temple of Aesculapius is five miles from Epidaurus.*—Liv.

(2) Space traversed:
Accusative; as, Millia tum pransi tria repimus, *then after dining we creep on three miles.*—Hor.

(3) Space of measurement:
Accusative, § 102; or Ablative, § 118; or Genitive of Quality; as, Areas latas pedum denum facito, *you must make barn-floors ten feet wide.*—Colum.

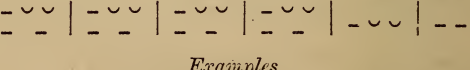
III. NOTES ON PROSODY.

Metre:—

A. (*a*) Dactylic Hexameter or Senarius.

This Metre has six feet. The first four may be Dactyls or Spondees. The fifth must be a Dactyl (rarely a Spondee). The sixth a Spondee.

Scheme.



Examples.

1. Sīcĕlĭ|dēs Mū|sae ‖ paū|lō mā|jōră că|nēmus.
2. Nōn ōm|nēs ār|būstă ‖ jŭ|vānt hŭmĭ|lēsquĕ mў|rīcae.

A break in a word, called Caesura, is usually made after the first syllable of the third foot, as after -sae, in (1). This is called a *strong* Caesura. If the break occurs after the second syllable of a Dactyl, as after -ta in (2), it is called a *weak* Caesura. Occasionally,

the chief Caesura occurs after the first syllable of the fourth foot, as in the following verse:

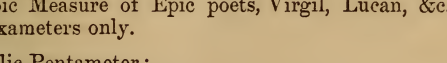
Clāmō|rēs sĭmŭl | hōrrēn | dōs ‖ ād | sīdĕră | tōllit.

The Heroic Measure of Epic poets, Virgil, Lucan, &c., consists of Dactylic Hexameters only.

(*b*) Dactylic Pentameter:

This Verse consists of two parts, called Penthemimers, which are kept distinct. The first Penthemimer contains two feet (Dactyls or Spondees) and a long syllable. The second contains also two feet (both Dactyls) and a long syllable.

Scheme.



Example.

Tū pătĕr | ēt mā|tēr ‖ tū mĭhĭ | frātĕr ĕ|rās.

This Verse is not used alone, but follows an Hexameter in the Elegiac Distich: as,

Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos,
Tempora si fuerint nubila, solus eris.

The chief Elegiac poets are Ovid, Tibullus, and Propertius.

B. (*a*) Iambic Trimeter or Senarius:

This Metre has six feet. Each may be an Iambus: as,

Sŭīs | ĕt īp|să Rō|mă vī|rĭbūs | rŭit.

But a Spondee may stand in the first, third, and fifth foot; and (rarely) a Dactyl or Anapaest (⏑ ⏑ –) in the first. A Tribrach (⏑ ⏑ ⏑) sometimes takes the place of an Iambus, except in the two last feet.

Scheme.

Examples.

Lābūn|tŭr āl|tīs ‖ īn|tĕrīm | rīpīs | ăquae.
Cănĭdĭ|ă brĕvĭ|bŭs ‖ īm|plĭcā|tă vī|pĕris.
Pŏsĭtōs|quĕ vēr|nās ‖ dī|tĭs ēx|āmēn | dŏmus.

The usual Caesura is after the first syllable of the third foot. Another, less usual, is after the first syllable of the fourth foot; as,

Ĭbē|rĭcīs | pĕrūs|tĕ ‖ fū|nĭbūs | lătus.

The Trimeter may form a distinct measure.

(*b*) Iambic Dimeter.

This Verse leaves out the third and fourth feet of the Trimeter, with which it is used to form an Iambic Distich; as,

Pătēr|nă rū|ră bō|bŭs ēx|ercēt | sŭis,
Sŏlū|tŭs ōm|nī fē|nŏre.

Horace uses this and also the single Trimeter in his Epodes.

C. The Sapphic Stanza:

This Stanza contains four lines. The three first are the same Verse repeated (Sapphicus Minor). The fourth is called Versus Adonius.

Scheme.

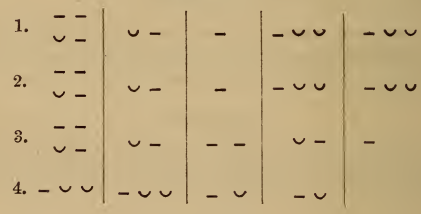
Example.

1. Ōtĭ|ūm dī | vōs rŏgăt | īn pă|tēnti
2. Prēnsŭs | Aēgaē|ō sĭmŭl | ātră | nūbes
3. Cōndĭ|dīt lū|nām nĕquĕ | cērtă | fŭlgent
4. Sīdĕră | naūtis.

D. The Alcaic Stanza:

This Stanza contains four lines: of which the two first are similar.

Scheme.



Example.

Ēheū | fŭgā|cēs | Pōstŭmĕ | Pōstŭme
Lābūn|tŭr ān|nī | nēc pĭĕ|tās mŏram
Rūgīs | ĕt īn|stāntī | sĕnēc|tae
Affĕrĕt | īndŏmĭ | tāēquĕ | mōrti.

Models of the Sapphic and Alcaic Stanzas, with other Lyric Metres, are found in the Odes of Horace. Rules for their elegant construction are given in the Grammar.

GLOSSARIUM GRAMMATICUM.

[N. E., Notes on Etymology. N. S., Notes on Syntax. N. P., Notes on Prosody. An Asterisk marks the new terms adopted in this Book.]

A.

Ablativus (auferre, *to take away*), the Ablative Case, so called from one of its uses (Departure). § 110–125. See CASE.

Absolutus Ablativus (absolvere, *to release*), the Ablative Absolute, because it stands *released*, as it were, from government. § 125.

Accusativus (accusare, *to accuse*), the Accusative Case, because the accused is the *Object* of prosecution. Gr. αἰτιατικὴ πτῶσις. § 95.

Activa Vox (agere, *to do*), the Active Voice of Verbs, expresses 'doing.'

Adjectivum, Adjective (quod *adjicitur* Substantivo). Gr. ἐπίθετον, *epithet*. §§ 32, 87, 89.

Adjectival Clauses. N. S. XII.

Adverbial Clauses. N. S. XI.

Adverbium, Adverb, 'quia ad Verbum est' Gr. ἐπίρρημα. §§ 9, 37, 82.

Alphabet, the Letters of a language, from Alpha, Beta (A, B), the two first letters in Greek, § 1.

**Annexive Relation*, that by which one word is annexed to another, so as to take the same construction. § 146.

Anomala, Irregular Words, Gr. ἀνώμαλα (ἀ, *not*; ὅμαλος, *even*). §§ 25, 78.

Apodosis (ἀποδιδόναι, *to render back*), a Principal Sentence limited by a Clause called Protasis (προτείνειν, *to stretch before*). N. S. XI. *B*.

Appositum (apponere, *to place beside*), an Apposite, or Substantive *placed beside* another in Attributive relation. §§ 87, 90. See p. 2.

Asyndeton (ἀ, *not*, συνδεῖν, *to bind together*), the annexing of words without a conjunction.

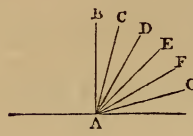
Attractio (attrahere, *to draw to*), a Figure of Syntax. § 159 N. S. I. *E*. 2.

Attributive Relation, the relation of an Attribute or Apposite to the words they qualify. This relation may be (1) Epithetic: as, Croesus dives; Croesus rex. (2) Attributively Enthetic (see *Enthesis*): as, Croesus, regum ditissimus, vincitur; Croesus, rex Lydorum, vincitur. (3) Adverbially Enthetic: as, Croesus non dives interiit; Croesus non rex interiit. (4) Complemental: as, Croesus fuit dives; Croesus fit rex. § 87.

Attributum (attribuere, *to assign*), Attribute; an Adjective *assigned* to qualify a Substantive. §§ 87, 89.

C.

Casus (cadere, *to fall*), Case. Gr. πτῶσις. *A.* By *Case* is meant the form given to a Noun or Pronoun in order to show the relation in which it stands to some other word in the sentence. Case (casus, from cado) is, literally, *a falling*. Grammarians represented that form which a Noun takes when it is the Subject of a sentence, by an upright line, as AB, and likened the other forms to lines *falling* away from the perpendicular at various angles; as, AC, AD, AE, AF, &c. These they called *Cases*; and their series, *the declension*, *declining*, or *sloping down*, of the word. Afterwards, the Nominative or Subject case was called (with evident impropriety) Casus Rectus, *the Upright Case*, and the others (except the Vocative) Casus Obliqui, *Oblique Cases*; whereas the *Stem* (or Crude-form) of the word is more properly the upright line, and the several Cases, including the Nominative and Vocative, are branches deflecting from it. So, from the Stem *nuc-* (*walnut-tree*) the Cases are: N.V. nuc-*s* (=nux), Acc. nuc-*em*, G. nuc-*is*, D. nuc-*i*, Ab. nuc-*e*.



B. The Relations which Cases fail to express are supplied by Prepositions; and in the languages of modern Europe the use of Prepositions prevails, and Declension is comparatively rare. Thus the languages derived from Latin (Italian, French, Spanish, and Portuguese) have only one Case-form in each Number for Nouns; English, two; German, four; but the Possessive Case in English is of limited use, and German Declension is freely developed only in the Articles. Of the ancient Aryan tongues, Sanskrit had the six Latin Cases and two more, the Instrumental and the Locative. Greek had only five cases in use, discarding the Ablative, the functions of which it divides between the Genitive and the Dative; but it retains traces of the Instrumental and the Locative. Latin retains many fragments of the Locative Case, as shown here and there in this Grammar; while the Pronominal forms, mihi, tibi, sibi, nobis, vobis, ubi, ibi, together with the Cases in -bus, appear to spring out of the primitive Instrumental Case, though in meaning they have lost all connection with it.

C. The primary force of the Cases is a much debated and still undecided question. Modern Grammarians have been inclined generally to explain it by relations of place and extent; and there is much speciousness in the theory which, taking the Nominative as the moving agent, regards the Ablative as the point which motion leaves, the Accusative as that to which it extends, and the Dative as the point of rest. But this theory fails to account for the Sanskrit and Latin Genitive; and against it may be urged that it assigns to the Ablative a place which in Greek is taken by the Genitive, and also that the Latin Ablative includes uses hardly consistent with that which is here stated to be its distinctive use. In this book classical usage has been followed, but without prejudice (it is hoped) to the future study of philosophical grammar.

Causalis Clausula, a Causal Clause; an Adverbial Clause introduced by quod, quia, quum, &c. § 152. N. S. XI.

Character (χαρακτήρ, *an impressed mark*), usually means the last letter of the Stem of an inflected word. § 11.

Circumstantive Relation, the relation in which a Word or Phrase stands to the Verb when it modifies it adverbially. Such is that of Adverbs, Prepositions with their Cases, the Ablative Case always, the Accusative Case often.

Clausula (claudere, *to inclose*), a Clause. This term is used to express any Subordinate Sentence. Co-ordinate Sentences are also called Clauses, but are not discussed in elementary Grammar. See *Enthesis*.

Collectiva (colligere, *to gather together*), Collective Nouns or Nouns of Multitude. N. S. I. *E.* 3.

Comparativa Clausula, a Comparative Clause: an Adverbial Clause introduced by quasi, tanquam, ut si, &c. § 152. N. S. XI.

**Complementum* (complere, *to complete*), the Complement, that which completes the construction of a Simple Sentence, when its Verb is the Copula or Copulative. §§ 87, 93. N. S. II.

**Compositum Subjectum*, a Composite Subject. § 92. N. S. I. *F.*

Concessiva Clausula (concedere, *to grant*), a Concessive Clause, an Adverbial Clause introduced by etsi, quamvis, &c. § 152. N. S. XI. *A.*

Conditionalis Clausula (conditio, *a condition*), the Protasis of a Conditional Sentence. § 152. N. S. XI. *B.*

Congruentia (congruere, *to agree*), Agreement. §§ 88–92.

Conjugatio (conjugare, *to yoke together*), the Flexion of Verbs. §§ 11, 48.

Conjunctio (conjungere, *to unite*), Conjunction. Gr. σύνδεσμος. §§ 85, 152.

Conjunctivus Modus, Conjunctive Mood; the Mood of contingent statement, used purely or subjunctively. §§ 42, 65, 148. N. S. IX.

Consecutio Temporum (consequi, *to ensue*), Consecution of Tenses. § 155. N. S. XIII.

Consecutiva Clausula, a Consecutive Clause; an Adverbial Clause denoting *consequence*, introduced by ut, *so that*. § 152. N. S. XI. *A.*

Consonantes Litterae (consonare, *to sound with*), Consonants. § 3.

SCHEME OF THE CONSONANTS.

	Mutes		Liquids			Spirants				Double
	Hard	Soft	Ranque	Smooth	Nasal	Sibilant	Pure	Mixed	Semivowel	
Guttural, or Throat sounds	c (k, q)	g	..	..	..	..	h	..	..	x
Dental, or Teeth sounds	t	d	r	l	n	s	..	..	j	z
Labial, or Lip sounds	p	b	..	..	m	..	..	f	v	

Contractio (contrahere, *to draw together*), the fusion of two vowels into one long one; as, fidei, fide.

Copula (link), any Finite form of the Verb sum, when incompletely Predicative, linking Subject and Complement. § 87. N. S. II.

Copulativa Verba (copulare, *to couple*), Copulative Verbs. § 87. N. S. I. Besides Sum, they comprise the Verbs—forem, *might be*; fio, *become*; appareo, *appear*; existo, *stand forth*; evado, *turn out*; audio, *am called*; maneo, *remain*; nascor, *am born*; videor, *seem*; with some others: also, many Passives of a class of Verbs called Factitive (facere), because they contain the idea of *making*, by deed, thought, or word; such Passives are—efficior, *am made*; creor, *am created*; designor, *am marked out*; legor, deligor, *am chosen*; eligor, *am elected*; declaror, *am declared*; renuntior, *am proclaimed*; nominor, nuncupor, *am named*; salutor, *am saluted*; appellor, vocor, *am called*; scribor, *am written down*; inscribor, *am entitled*; describor, *am described*; aestimor, *am esteemed*; numeror, *am reckoned*; credor, *am believed*; existimor, putor, *am thought*; ducor, *am deemed*; judicor, *am judged*; habeor, *am held*; censeor, *am counted*; noscor, *am known*; agnoscor, *am acknowledged*; dicor, *am said*; narror, *am related*; feror, perhibeor, trador, *am reported*; invenior, reperior, *am found*; deprehendor, *am discovered*; arguor, evincor, probor, *am proved*.

Correlativa, Pronouns and Particles which mutually correspond in their several classes. § 38. N. E. III.

D.

Dativus Casus (dare, *to give*; Gr. δοτικὴ πτῶσις), the Dative (Receptive) Case. §§ 104–109. N. S. IV.

Declinatio (declinare, *to slope down*), the Flexion of Nouns. § 12. See *Case*.

Defectiva (deficere, *to fail*), Words wanting some forms. §§ 25, 74.

Deminutiva (deminuere, *to lessen*). N. E. I. *D.* 2.

Deponens Verbum, a Deponent Verb, so called because it lays aside (deponit) Active form, having Active sense. § 40.

E.

Ellipsis (ἐλλείπειν, *to leave out*), a Figure of Syntax. § 158. N. S. i. *E.* 1.

Enclitica, (ἐγκλίνειν, *to lean on*), words which throw back their accent on the word before them: as, -quĕ, -vĕ, -nĕ.

**Enthesis* (ἐντιθέναι, *to place in*), a group of words, sometimes one word, forming an abbreviated Adjectival or Adverbial Clause. See *Attributive Relation*, observing that the Entheses, regum ditissimus, rex Lydorum, are equivalent to the Clauses, qui regum ditissimus fuit, qui rex Lydorum fuit; and the Entheses dives, rex, to the Clauses dum dives erat, dum rex erat. An Ablative Absolute is usually an Adverbial Enthesis of Time, Cause, Condition, or Concession.

Enunciatio (enunciare, *to state*), a proposition or statement; the first and principal of the three forms of a Simple Sentence. N. S. x. *A.*

Enunciatio Obliqua, Oblique Enunciation (indirect statement), the first and principal of the three kinds of Substantival Clauses. Its chief form is the Infinitive Clause (Accusative-and-Infinitive). § 94. N. S. x. *A.* (1).

Epithet (Gr. *ἐπίθετον*), an Adjective simply qualifying a Noun: vir bonus, *a* good *man*. § 87. See *Attributive Relation*.

Etymologia (Gr. *ἔτυμός*, *true*; *λόγος*, *word*), Etymology; that division of Grammar which treats of Word-formation.

F.

Factitiva Verba (facere, *to make*), Factitive or Quid-quale Verbs. § 99. N. S. III. *D.*

Figura, Figure (fingere, *to fashion*), a term used in Grammar for a 'Fashion' which departs from ordinary use. Figures are either of Etymology (as Contraction), of Syntax (as Ellipsis), of Prosody (as Synaloepha), or of Rhetoric (as Metaphora).

Finalis Clausula (finis, *end*), Final Clause; an Adverbial Clause, expressing purpose: introduced by ut, *in order that*; ne, *lest*, &c. § 152. N. S. XI. *A.*, XIV. *A. d.*

Finitum Verbum, Finite Verb; a term comprising the three moods of a Verb, which have limits (fines), especially of Person, from which the other forms (hence called Verbum Infinitum) are free. § 42.

Flexio (flectere, *to bend*), Flexion; also called Inflection. § 11.

G.

Genitivus (*γενικὴ πτῶσις*), the Genitive (Proprietive) Case. § 126–136. N. S. VI.

Genus (*kind*), Gender; the distinction of Nouns, as Masculine (m.), Feminine (f.), or Neuter (n.), that is, *neither* of the two former.

Gerundium : Gerundivum (gerere, *to perform*). The Gerundive is the Latin Participle in dus, and the Gerund is probably its Neuter Singular, declined as a Substantive, and attached to the Infinitive Verb-noun. The Gerundive seems to have been originally a Present Participle (oriundus, volvenda dies, etc.), but whether Active or Passive is disputed. § 140. N. S. VII.

Graecismus, Graecism; the imitation of a Greek idiom in Latin.

H.

Historic Infinitive, the Infinitive used in direct predication for a Finite Verb. § 140, 2. N. S. VII. *A.*

I.

Imperativus Modus (imperare, *to command*), the Imperative Mood in Verbs, which *commands* or entreats. § 42.

Impersonalia Verba (in, *not*, persona, *person*), Impersonal Verbs, which cannot take a Personal Pronoun as Subject. §§ 75, 175. N.S. XIV. *F.*

Indicativus Modus (indicare, *to show*), the declarative or absolute Mood of Verbs. § 42.

Infinitiva Clausula, the Infinitive Clause: the Substantival Clause called Accusative and Infinitive. See *Enunciatio Obliqua.*

Infinitivum (Nomen), the Verb-noun Infinitive. §§ 45, 140. N. S. VII.

Infinitum Verbum. §§ 45, 140. N. S. VII. See *Finitum Verbum.*

Interjectio (interjicere, *to throw between*). §§ 86, 137.

Interrogatio Infinitiva, the Infinitive Clause used as an indignant question. N. S. x. *D.*

Interrogatio Obliqua, Oblique Interrogation. As Direct Interrogation is one of the three forms which a Simple Sentence may assume, so Oblique or Indirect Interrogation is one of the three kinds of Substantival Clauses. § 149. N. S. x. *A.* (3).

Intransitiva Verba, Intransitive Verbs; Verbs which do not regularly take an Accusative of the Object. N. S. III. *D.* See *Transitiva.*

K

Kalendarium, the Calendar or plan of the days of the Roman month; so called from Kalendae, *the Calends,* or first day in it. N. E. IV. *C.*

L.

Locativus (locus, *place*), Locative Case; a case existing in Sanskrit, of which fragments remain in Greek and Latin. § 121. N. S. v. *G.* 2.

M.

Mobilia Substantiva (mobilis, *moveable*). Substantives which have a Feminine corresponding to a Masculine form. N. E. I. *D.* 1.

Modus (manner), Mood; that Accident of a Verb which shows the manner in which its action or state is conceived of. § 42.

N.

Negativae Particulae (negare, *to deny*), Negatives. § 82. N. S. XIV. *A.*

Nomina (Gr. *ὄνομα, a name*), Nouns comprise Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns; but the term is often used when Substantives alone are meant. § 9.

Nominativus Casus (nominare, *to name.* Gr. *ὀνομαστικὴ πτῶσις*). §§ 87, 88, 93. See *Case.*

**Noun-term*, a Substantive, or what may stand for a Substantive; as Adjective, Pronoun, Verb-noun or Substantival Clause. § 87. N. S. I. *C.*

Numeralia, words representing Number. N. E. IV. *A.*

Numaria Res, Roman money. N. E. IV. *D.*

O.

Objective Relation, that of the Accusative of the Nearer Object to a Transitive Verb. N. S. III.

Objectum (objicere, *to cast in the way*), Object; that which is affected by action: if directly affected it is called Nearer Object (Accusative); if indirectly, Remoter Object (Dative). N. S. III. IV.

Obliqua Oratio (Oblique Oration), any statement, command, or question expressed in indirect construction. This term includes the three Substantival Clauses: Oblique Enunciation, Petition, and Interrogation, though sometimes used with special reference to the construction of Accusative-and-Infinitive (Infinitive Clause), which is the chief form of Oblique Enunciation or Narration. N. S. x. *A. B.*

Oblique Subject, the Accusative Subject of an Infinitive. § 94.

Oblique Complement, the Accusative Complement of an Oblique Copulative Clause. § 94. N. S. II. *A.*, III. *D.*

P.

Participium (partem capere, *to take a share*), an Adjectival Verb-form which shares the functions of Adjective and Verb. §§ 45, 142. N.S. XIV. *D.*

Partes Orationis, Parts of Speech, or Words. § 9.

Particulæ, Particles, or small Parts of Speech; a name given to the four undeclined Parts, and also including some which are only used in compound words; as, ambi-, re-, se-, in-, dis-. § 82, &c.

Partitiva Vocabula (partiri, *to divide*). N. S. VI. *B.*

Passiva Vox (pati, *to suffer*), the Passive Voice, or form used in Verbs to show that something is acted upon, and so '*suffers.*' This Voice is proper to Transitive Verbs only; but many Intransitive Verbs use it in Impersonal construction. § 76. A Passive Verb is often Reflexive; as, vertor, *I turn myself.* For *Passive Construction* see N. S. XIV. *E.*

Patronymicum (πατήρ, *father*; ὄνομα, *name*), Patronymic, a title expressing descent from a father or ancestor.

Perfectum (perficere, *to complete*) *Tempus*, the Perfect Tense, which in Latin has a double use. § 48. N. S. XIII.

Perfect-stem. §§ 46, 48.

Periphrastic Conjugation (περιφράζειν, *to speak circuitously*). § 64.

Petitio Obliqua. As Petition (command or entreaty) is the second of the three forms of Simple Sentences, so Oblique Petition is the second of the three kinds of Substantival Clauses. N. S. X. *A.* (2).

Phrasis (φράσις), a Phrase; a combination of words, or a single word idiomatically used, containing a notion, but not forming a Clause or an Enthesis; as, multae artis, ruri, Preposition with Case, etc.

Position (situs), a term in Prosody to express that a vowel is short, long, or doubtful, by standing before other letters. § 162.

Praedicatum (praedicare, *to declare*), the Predicate of a Sentence, or that which is declared of the Subject. Writers on Logic resolve every proposition into Subject, Copula, and what they call Predicate. But in Grammar this would only mislead, for it is not in this form that authors write. Since every Finite Verb is Predicative, inaccuracy is avoided by calling the Verb a Predicate only when it completes Predication, but in other instances 'the Verb of the Sentence.' When the Verb is the Copula or a Verb Copulative, the term which links it to the Subject, and completes the Predication, is called Complement (instead of Predicate), by which the inconvenience of giving the same title to Nouns and Verbs is obviated. § 87.

Praepositio (praeponere, *to place before*), Gr. πρόθεσις. §§ 9, 83, 103, 122. N. S. XIV. *C.*

Predicative Relation, the Relation existing between Subject and Verb of the Simple Sentence.

Present-Stem. §§ 11, 46. The Present-Stem of many Verbs differs from the True Stem. The chief variations are these:

1. *N* is inserted before the Consonant-character: as, fi-*n*-do, fra-*n*-go, &c. Before a labial this *n* becomes *m*: as, la-*m*-bo, ru-*m*-po.
2. *N* is suffixed (*a*) to a Vowel-character: as, si-*n*-o, li-*n*-o; (*b*) to a Liquid-character: as, tem-*n*-o, cer-*n*-o, sper-*n*-o, ster-*n*-o. So po-*n*-o for pos-*n*-o.
3. *Sc* is suffixed (*a*) to a Vowel-character: as, pa-*sc*-o, ira-*sc*-or, cre-*sc*-o, &c.; (*b*) to a Consonant-character with *i*: as, ulc-*isc*-or. So di-*sc*-o for dic-sc-o; na-*n*-c-*isc*-or for nac-or.
4. *L* is doubled: as, pel-*l*-o, tol-*l*-o.
5. *T* is suffixed to Guttural-character: as, flec-*t*-o, pec-*t*-o, nec-*t*-o.
6. A Guttural is cast out: as, stru-o for stru-*c*-o, vivo for vi-*g*-uo.
7. The Stem is re-duplicated: as, *gi*-g-no for gen-o, *si*-sto for sto.

**Prolative Relation* (proferre, *to extend*), that in which Predication is *extended* by an Infinitive (therefore called *Prolative*), joined to Verbs, Participles, and, poetically, Adjectives. § 140. N. S. VII. *B.* Attentive consideration shows that this use of the Infinitive is really distinct from its Objective use, constituting a special relation in grammar, and requiring a distinctive appellation.

Pronomen (Gr. ἀντωνυμία), an inflected Part of Speech, ranking among Nouns, and so called because it is a substitute for a name. § 38.

Propria Nomina, Proper Names; Nouns *peculiar* to Person or Place.

Proprietive Relation, that of the Genitive to the word proper to it. § 126.

Prosodia (προσᾴδειν, *to sing in accord*), Prosody; that division of Grammar which treats of Quantity of Syllables and of Rhythm. The Laws of Metre are usually comprised in it. § 161. Notes.

Protasis. See *Apodosis.*

R.

* *Receptive Complement*, an idiom, by which the Dative stands in the Complement, often with another Dative. § 108.

Receptive Relation (recipere, *to receive*), that of the Dative, as Case of the Recipient, to the governing word. § 104–109. N. S. IV.

Recta Oratio, Direct Oration, in a Principal Sentence, as distinguished from Oratio Obliqua. N. S. X.

Reduplicatio (reduplicare, *to redouble*), Reduplication; a peculiar mutation of form, by which the sense of words is varied, in Greek, Latin, and other languages. In Latin, its chief use is in forming the Perfect-stem of Verbs. See §§ 48, 81 II. (5), III. 9.

Reflexiva Pronomina (reflectere, *to bend back*), Reflexive Pronouns: se, with its Possessive suus; so called, because they 'bend back' their relation to the principal noun preceding; generally (but not always) the Subject of the Principal Sentence. § 145. N. S. VIII.

Relation. The Relations of Construction existing between the words of a Simple Sentence are eight in number: (1) Predicative; (2) Attributive; (3) Objective; (4) Receptive; (5) Circumstantive; (6) Proprietive; (7) Prolative; (8) Annexive. See these Words.

Relativum Pronomen (referre, *to refer*), the Relative Pronoun qui, so called because *referred* to an Antecedent Noun-term. See § 91,

N. S. 1. From this root are derived the Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns, and the Particles connected with them. In Latin Syntax the importance of the Relative is great.

Root, the common part of kindred words: as, ag- in ago, agito, agmen. § 11.

S.

Scansio (scandere, *to climb*), the measurement of feet in a verse.

Sententia (sentire, *to express thought*), a Sentence. § 87. Sentences are Simple or Compound. A Simple Sentence is either a statement (enunciatio), a command or request (petitio), or a question (interrogatio). A Compound Sentence consists of two or more Simple Sentences linked together, one being the Principal Sentence, the rest either Co-ordinate (not dependent) or Subordinate (dependent in construction); which two kinds are called Clauses. N. S. x. *A*. See *Clausula*.

Spirants (spirare, *to breathe*). § 3. See *Consonantes*.

Stem, the crude form of a Word without the Endings: as, mensa-, mone-. A Vowel-stem stripped of its vowel is called a Clipt Stem: as, mon- for mon-e-.

Subjectum (subjicere, *to place under*), Subject. §§ 87, 88, 93, 94. N. S. i. ii.

**Subobliqua Clausula*, a Suboblique Clause, subordinate to Oratio Obliqua. If Oratio Obliqua is contained in the sense only, not in form, the Subordinate Clause is said to be 'Subobliquae potestatis,' of Suboblique power, or 'virtually Suboblique.' N. S. x. *B*.

Substantival Clauses, the three forms of a Simple Sentence (statement, command, question) thrown into Oblique Construction, and called Oblique Enunciation, Oblique Petition and Oblique Interrogation. N. S. x. *A*.

Substantivum (substare, *to stand beneath*), a Substantive, the first of the inflected Parts of Speech. §§ 9 I. (1), 12, 16, etc.

Superlativus Gradus (superferre, *to carry above*), the highest Degree of a Compared Adjective or Adverb. §§ 35–37.

Supine-Stem. § 47.

Supinum, Supine, an unmeaning term, applied to the two Cases of the Verb-noun which end in *um* and *u* severally. §§ 45, 141 (5) (6).

Syllaba (συλλαμβάνειν, *to take together*), a Syllable; that is, one or more letters pronounced in a breath. § 5.

Syncope (συγκόπτειν, *to cut short*), the shortening of a word by casting out an inner vowel: as, patri for pateri.

Synesis (σύνεσις, *meaning*), a Figure of Syntax. § 160. N. S. i. *E*. 3.

Syntaxis (συντάσσειν, *to arrange together*), that division of Grammar which treats of the construction of sentences.

T.

Temporalis Clausula, a Temporal Clause: an Adverbial Clause introduced by a Conjunction of Time. § 152. N. S. xi.

Tempus (time), Tense; that which marks the time of action in Verbs. §§ 43, 48.

Tempus (time), Quantity. § 162.

**Trajectiva* (trajicere, *to throw over*); Verbs and Adjectives, which take a Dative. Pure Trajective Verbs have a Dative alone (Cui-Verbs): Trajective Verbs Transitive (Cui-quid Verbs) have Accusative and Dative. § 104. N. S. iv.

Transitiva Verba (transire, *to pass over*), Verbs which pass over to an Accusative of the nearer Object. § 96 N. S. iii.

U.

Universalia, a large class of Pronouns and Pronominals. N. E. iii.

V.

Verb of Being (sum, esse). Gr. *ῥῆμα ὑπαρκτικόν*. This has been translated by Latin Grammarians, 'Verbum Substantivum'; a term not true to the Greek, and confusing to learners. Sum is the Verb of Being, essential to the expression of thought. It supplies the Copula of Grammar and Logic. Hence we find its root widely spread throughout the languages of the world. §§ 49, 87. N. S. ii.

Verbum (Gr. *ῥῆμα*, *the word*), Verb; an inflected Part of Speech, so called, as *the Word* which effects discourse. §§ 9, 39, etc.

**Verb-Noun*. All the parts of the Verb Infinite are Verb-Nouns Substantival or Adjectival, uniting functions of the Verb with functions of the Noun. §§ 45, 140, etc. N. S. i. *C.*

Vocales (vox, *voice*), Vowels. § 2. Their relations are shown in the following scheme, in which the sign ⊢ represents the vowel wavering between *i* and *u* (optĭmus, optŭmus), which the Emperor Claudius brought for a time into public use:

Standard vowel
a
Sharp medial e o Flat medial
Sharp semiconsonant i ⊢ u Flat semiconsonant
Medial

J and *u* did not exist anciently. *J* was introduced to represent the consonant power of *i*; *u* to represent the vowel-power of *v*.

Vocativus Casus (vocare, *to call*), the Case of one addressed, which stands out of the Sentence. §§ 14, 87, 137.

Vowel-change, the weakening or strengthening of Vowels, which occurs in Flexion, Derivation and Composition. It appears in the formation of the Perfect and Supine Stems of Verbs, and in the change of many Simple Verbs when compounded. §§ 81, 84. N. E. ii.

Vox, Voice; that form, by which Verbs are shown as *doing* or *suffering*. § 39. N. S. xiv. *E.*

LONDON
PRINTED BY SPOTTISWOODE AND CO.
NEW-STREET SQUARE

Just published, in 12mo. price 2s. 6d. cloth,

THE

PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.

Edited with the Sanction of the Head Masters of the Public Schools included in Her Majesty's Commission.

THIS *Latin Primer*—which is now in use in all the Nine Schools named in Her Majesty's Commission, viz. Winchester, Eton, St. Paul's, Westminster, Merchant Taylors', Rugby, Shrewsbury, Harrow, and Charter House,—is founded on a Latin Grammar which has been largely used in English Schools during the last twenty years. It has been revised with great care and attention, first by its Author, subsequently by the Head Masters of various public schools, with the advice of other scholars engaged in classical instruction. In the manner of its use, this book does not differ from the Grammar on which it is founded, or from any other synthetic grammar. Its memorial lessons need discreet guidance, careful explanation, and sound catechesis on the part of the masters. They need also to be supported and supplemented by good exercise-books (such as *Subsidia Primaria*, now in the press) of a merely analytic and imitative character.

LATIN SCHOOL BOOKS

ADAPTED TO THE PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.

The First LATIN PARSING BOOK, adapted to the Public School Latin Primer. By JOHN T. WHITE, D.D. of C. C. C. Oxford; Joint-Author of WHITE and RIDDLE's Latin Dictionary. 12mo. price 2*s*.

THIS Parsing Book has for its object the gradual teaching of the structure of the Latin language in accordance with the Rules laid down in the *Syntax* of the *Public School Latin Primer*. It consists of Two Parts. In the First, each Rule of Syntax has been elucidated by the selection of a Passage or portion of a passage from a standard writer, and by its analysis in such a way as to bring out an exemplification of the rule. Care has also been taken to render the course of instruction altogether progressive.

In the Second Part the Author, reversing his mode of proceeding, has presented to the learner the Passages themselves as they are found in the writers from whose works they have been taken, and that without any guide to the construction of their several parts. By reading them as thus printed, the pupil's attainments may be readily tested; and it may be at once seen whether his knowledge, not merely of parsing, but of the words which he has had brought before his notice, is really such as from his training it ought to be.

A VOCABULARY is given of all the words occurring in the work.

BRADLEY'S *CORNELIUS NEPOS*, with Grammatical Notes adapted to the Public School Latin Primer. By JOHN T. WHITE, D.D. 12mo. price 3*s*. 6*d*.

BRADLEY'S *EUTROPIUS*, with Grammatical Notes adapted to the Public School Latin Primer, and a Vocabulary on the plan of Dr. WHITE's 'Junior Scholar's Latin Dictionary.' By JOHN T. WHITE, D.D. 12mo. 2*s*. 6*d*.

London: LONGMANS, GREEN, and CO. Paternoster Row.

BRADLEY'S SELECT FABLES of *PHÆDRUS*, with Grammatical Notes adapted to the Public School Latin Primer, and a Vocabulary on the plan of WHITE'S 'Junior Scholar's Latin Dictionary.' By JOHN T. WHITE, D.D. 12mo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

IN the new editions of *Phædrus*, *Eutropius*, *Cornelius Nepos*, Dr. WHITE has altogether remodelled the notes and adapted their grammatical portion to the *Syntax* of the *Public School Latin Primer*. This he has done from a conviction, based on careful and dispassionate examination, that that Syntax is more philosophical, more simple, and better adapted for the instruction of boys whose reading does not exceed its limits than any found in any elementary Grammar which has yet appeared.

The *Phædrus* and *Eutropius* are each accompanied by a Vocabulary of the words which they respectively contain. To this portion of the works, which is written on the plan of Dr. WHITE'S *Junior Scholar's Latin-English Dictionary*, much information formerly embodied in the Notes has been transferred. And it should further be noticed, as an important feature attaching to it, that here also will be found an accord with the *Public School Latin Primer*. The principles which guided Dr. WHITE in the preparation of the various Latin-English Dictionaries to which his name is attached will be found fully and systematically developed in his *Latin Suffixes*; and a comparison of that work with so much of the *Public School Latin Primer* as speaks of the formation of words will show a harmony of thought upon the subject between the Authors of the two works. This will be further seen by reference to the Preface of the *Junior Scholar's Latin-English Dictionary*; a Dictionary—indeed the *only* Dictionary—in which the above-named principles form the basis of the treatment of its words, and which, by the mode of printing adopted, exhibits them to the eye at a glance.

THE FOLLOWING

SCHOOL BOOKS ADAPTED TO THE PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER

ARE NEARLY READY FOR PUBLICATION.

SUBSIDIA PRIMARIA, being a Companion Book to the Public School Latin Primer. By the same Editor.

PRAXIS LATINA PRIMARIA, a Handbook of Questions and Exercises for daily use; adapted to the Public School Latin Primer. By JOHN DAY COLLIS, D.D. Head Master of King Edward VI. Grammar School, Bromsgrove.

*** Also, by the same Author, similarly adapted, the Sixth Edition of *PONTES CLASSICI*, No. I. and the Eleventh Edition of *IRREGULAR LATIN VERBS*.

The First LATIN EXERCISE BOOK, adapted to the Public School Latin Primer; being a Companion Book to Dr. WHITE'S First Latin Parsing Book. By JOHN T. WHITE, D.D.

VALPY'S LATIN DELECTUS. Edited by JOHN T. WHITE, D.D.

The Rev. *Dr. KENNEDY'S PALÆSTRA STILI LATINI* and *CURRICULUM STILI LATINI*, New Editions of both works adapted to the Public School Latin Primer.

*** *The above Works are all printed uniformly with the Public School Latin Primer.*

Lately published, and may now be had,

ELEMENTARY LATIN PROSE EXERCISES. By the Rev. H. MUSGRAVE WILKINS, M.A. Fellow of Merton College, Oxford. Fifth Edition, adapted to the Public School Latin Primer. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.* KEY (for *Schoolmasters* and *Tutors* only), price 5*s.*

Messrs. LONGMANS and Co. have recently published, in square 12mo. pp. 664, price 7*s.* 6*d.* bound,

The JUNIOR SCHOLAR'S LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY, abridged for the use of Schools from the Dictionaries of White and Riddle, by JOHN T. WHITE, D.D. of Corpus Christi College, Oxford, surviving Joint-Author.

*** In this Dictionary, the Formation of Words, which forms one prominent feature of the Public School Latin Primer, is, by the mode of printing adopted, exhibited to the eye at a glance.

London: LONGMANS, GREEN, and CO. Paternoster Row.

H 106 75

3rd

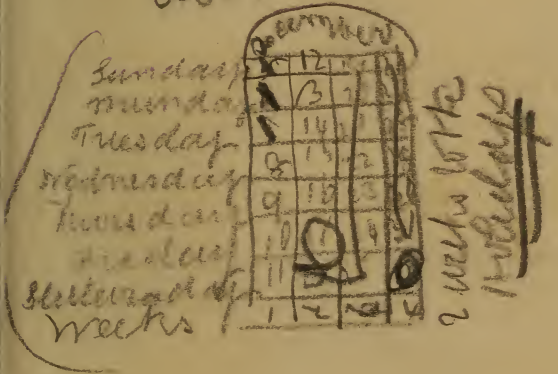
N & V. —

Acc: -em - except nouns neuter then acc = N & V

Gen: -is

Dat: -i

Abl: -e



Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: July 2006

PreservationTechnologies
A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION
111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111

THE LIBRARY OF CONGRESS

DEC 74
N. MANCHESTER,
INDIANA

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 003 039 056 8